ON CERTAIN NUMERICAL INVARIANTS OF ALGEBRAIC VARIETIES WITH APPLICATION TO ABELIAN VARIETIES

BY

SOLOMON LEFSCHETZ

(Continued from p. 406)

§ 3. The characteristic equation is irreducible and Abelian

90. The first problem which presents itself is that of the determination of the indices. This determination will result from the following theorem:

In order that the matrix

$$\Omega \equiv \| 1, \alpha_j, \alpha_j^2, \cdots, \alpha_j^{2p-1} \| \qquad (j = 1, 2, \cdots, p),$$

where the (α)'s are roots of an irreducible Abelian equation $F(\alpha) = 0$ with $\bar{\alpha}_j = \alpha_{p+j}$, be impure, it is necessary and sufficient that the group G of the equation contain a subgroup G' maintaining the set $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \cdots, \alpha_p$ invariant.

In order that Ω be impure it is necessary and sufficient that there exist a pair of non-conjugate roots (α_m, α_n) which cannot be deduced from a pair of roots with indices $\leqq p$ by any substitution of G. We shall have $\alpha_n = U\alpha_m$, where U is a well-defined substitution of G. If α_j is a root of index $< p$, there will exist a substitution T such that $\alpha_m = T\alpha_j$. The root $T^{-1}\alpha_n$ must not be one of the roots $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \cdots, \alpha_p$, hence it is the conjugate $S\alpha_k$ of a root α_k of index $k < p$, that is

$$S\alpha_k = T^{-1}\alpha_n = T^{-1}U\alpha_m = T^{-1}UT\alpha_j = U\alpha_j,$$

and hence $\alpha_k = S^{-1}U\alpha_j = SU\alpha_j$. This shows that the set $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \cdots, \alpha_p$ is transformed into itself by SU which is not the substitution unity, if $U \neq S$, as is actually the case since $\alpha_m \neq \bar{\alpha}_n$. The condition is therefore necessary.

On the other hand, if a substitution T (which cannot be S) maintains invariant the set $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \cdots, \alpha_p$, I say that the pair of roots (α_j, α_k) $(j, k \leqq p)$ cannot be permuted with a pair $(\alpha_h, ST\alpha_h)$. To begin with, this is equivalent to affirming that it cannot be permuted with $(\alpha_j, ST\alpha_j)$. For if $\alpha_j = T'\alpha_h$, the pair $(\alpha_h, ST\alpha_h)$ can be permuted with $(\alpha_j, T'ST\alpha_h)$ or $(\alpha_j, ST\alpha_j)$. Assume then that there exists a substitution U of G permuting (α_j, α_k) with this last pair. Since G is Abelian it possesses no other substitution than the identity maintaining a root invariant. Now U is certainly not the identity for then we would have $\alpha_k = ST\alpha_j$, which is im-

possible for ST permutes the set $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \cdots, \alpha_p$ with $\alpha_{p+1}, \alpha_{p+2}, \cdots, \alpha_{2p}$, and hence $k > p$ contrary to our assumptions. We must therefore have $ST\alpha_j = U\alpha_j$, $\alpha_j = U\alpha_k$, and consequently $U = ST$, $\alpha_j = ST\alpha_k$, which leads to a similar contradiction: $j > p$. It follows that G may not contain any substitution such as U. There is then a pair of conjugate roots which may not be derived from those of indices $\leqq p$ by substitutions of G, and Ω is impure, as was to be proved.

91. Let n be the order of G', assumed now to be the maximum subgroup maintaining invariant the set of multipliers $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \cdots, \alpha_p$. G' does not contain S, hence the product of G' by S is a subgroup of order $2n$ of G. It follows that $2n$ divides the order $2p$ of G, and therefore n divides p. The roots $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \cdots, \alpha_{2p}$ can be subdivided into $2p'$ sets of n roots, each set being composed of the roots derived from one of them by the substitutions of G'. Of these sets, p', say $(\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \cdots, \alpha_n)$, $(\alpha_{n+1}, \cdots, \alpha_{2n})$, $\cdots$, $(\alpha_{(p'-1)n+1}, \cdots, \alpha_{p'n})$, form the set of p multipliers.

Let us designate by $A_1, A_2, \cdots, A_{p'}$ these sets of roots, and by $A_{p'+j}$ the set formed by the conjugate roots of those which compose A_j. Any substitution of G which does not belong to G' merely permutes the (A)'s among themselves. Moreover there exists none maintaining invariant the set $(A_1, A_2, \cdots, A_{p'})$ for otherwise G' would not be the maximum subgroup maintaining invariant the set of multipliers $(\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \cdots, \alpha_p)$. The group $G'' = G/G'$ of permutations of the (A)'s is also Abelian and we can apply to G'' and the (A)'s the same reasoning as before to G and the (α)'s. In particular the pai s $(A_j, A_{p'+j})$ are the only pairs which may not be derived from the pairs (A_j, A_k) of indices $j, k \leqq p'$, by the substitutions of G''. Let then α_j, α_k be a pair of roots and $A_{j'}, A_{k'}$ the (A)'s to which they belong. If the difference $j' - k' \neq \pm p'$, there exists a substitution of G'' permuting the pair $(A_{j'}, A_{k'})$ with a pair $(A_{j''}, A_{k''})$ of indices $j'', k'' \leqq p'$. This substitution permutes (α_j, α_k) with a pair of roots of indices $\leqq p$ and (α_j, α_k) is not an excluded pair. Moreover, in order that (α_j, α_k) be not excluded, it is necessary that $(A_{j'}, A_{k'})$ be permutable with a pair $(A_{j''}, A_{k''})$, $(j'', k'' \leqq p')$, which requires that $j' - k' \neq \pm p'$. Hence, the only pairs excluded are those for which $j' - k' = \pm p'$ and these pairs are all effectively excluded. Their number is $p + t = n^2 p' = np$, and therefore finally

$$1 + h = 2(1 + k) = 2np.$$

Remark: Let there be a set of roots $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \cdots, \alpha_{p+qn}$, composed of $p' + q$ groups A_i, say $A_1, A_2, \cdots, A_{p'+q}$. Then from the pairs of roots (α_j, α_k) of indices $j, k \leqq p + qn$, we may certainly derive all pairs of roots without exception. This is an immediate consequence of the fact that among the (A)'s of the above set there are at least two whose indices differ by p'.

92. We shall now endeavor to obtain the structure of Ω when it is impure. For this purpose let

$$\beta_{q,s} = \alpha^s_{(q-1)n+1} + \alpha^s_{(q-1)n+2} + \cdots + \alpha^s_{qn}$$

and observe that Ω is isomorphic to a matrix Ω' whose p' first rows are

$$\begin{array}{llll} \beta_{1,1}, & \beta_{1,2}, & \cdots, & \beta_{1,2p} \\ \beta_{2,1}, & \beta_{2,2}, & \cdots, & \cdots \\ \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot \\ \beta_{p',1}, & \cdots, & \cdots, & \beta_{p',2p}. \end{array}$$

The (β)'s are invariant under the substitutions of G' and those belonging to the same index s are permuted among themselves by the substitutions of G''. Consider, then, the equations in the unknowns n_i

$$n_1 \beta_{s,1} + n_2 \beta_{s,2} + \cdots + n_{2p} \beta_{s,2p} = 0 \qquad (s = 1, 2, \cdots, 2p').$$

The array of the coefficients is composed of $2p'$ rows derived from the determinant which may be formed with the periods of Ω' and their conjugates, hence the array is of rank $2p'$ and these equations are independent. Since G merely permutes them among themselves, they possess $2(p - p')$ independent rational solutions, and Ω' and hence Ω is isomorphic to a matrix

$$\left\| \begin{array}{ll} \omega, & 0 \\ 0, & \Omega_1 \end{array} \right\|;$$

$$\omega \equiv \| \beta_{j,h_1}, \beta_{j,h_2}, \cdots, \beta_{j,h_{2p'}} \| \qquad (j = 1, 2, \cdots, p'),$$

the indices $h_1, h_2, \cdots, h_{2p'}$ being chosen so that there exists no relation

$$d_1 \beta_{j,h_1} + d_2 \beta_{j,h_2} + \cdots + d_{2p'} \beta_{j,h_{2p'}} = 0$$

with integer coefficients d_i. For every other $\beta_{j,s}$ there will exist a relation

$$\beta_{j,s} = e_1 \beta_{j,h_1} + e_2 \beta_{j,h_2} + \cdots + e_{2p'} \beta_{j,h_{2p'}} \qquad (j = 1, 2, \cdots, 2p'),$$

where the (e)'s are rational. Hence an arbitrary rational function of the (α)'s belonging to the group G'' is of the form

$$\beta_1 = c_1 \beta_{1,h_1} + c_2 \beta_{2,h_1} + \cdots + c_{2p'} \beta_{2p',h_1},$$

where the (c)'s are rational numbers and the $2p' - 1$ conjugate values $\beta_2, \beta_3, \cdots, \beta_{2p'}$ of the algebraic domain determined by the multipliers are given by

$$\beta_j = c_1 \beta_{j,h_1} + c_2 \beta_{j,h_2} + \cdots + c_{2p'} \beta_{j,h_{2p'}}.$$

We then have $\beta_{j,h_s} = g_s(\beta_j)$, where the (g)'s are polynomials of degree $2p' - 1$ at most with rational coefficients and ω is therefore isomorphic to

$$\| g_1(\beta_j), g_2(\beta_j), \cdots, g_{2p'}(\beta_j) \| \qquad (j = 1, 2, \cdots, p'),$$

and finally to

$$\| 1, \beta_j, \beta_j^2, \cdots, \beta_j^{2p'-1} \| \qquad (j = 1, 2, \cdots, p').$$

Now $\beta_1, \beta_2, \cdots, \beta_{2p'}$ are roots of an irreducible Abelian equation of order $2p'$ whose group is G'' and no subgroup of G'' maintains the set $(\beta_1, \beta_2, \cdots, \beta_{p'})$ invariant, this always because G' is the maximum subgroup of G maintaining invariant the set $(\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \cdots, \alpha_p)$. Hence ω is pure and its indices h', k' are given by $1 + h' = 2(1 + k') = 2p'$. As to Ω, it is isomorphic to a matrix

$$\begin{Vmatrix} \omega, & 0, & \cdots, & 0 \\ 0, & \omega, & \cdots, & \cdot \\ \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot \\ \cdot & \cdot & \cdots, & \omega \end{Vmatrix}$$

with n terms in the principal diagonal, as results from the fact that the reduction to the type (II) is unique. For its invariants we have then

$$1 + h = n^2(1 + h') = 2n^2 p';$$

hence

$$1 + h = 2(1 + k) = 2n^2 p' = 2np,$$

as we have already shown in a different manner in No. 91.

93. The multiplications of Ω can be found without difficulty and in fact in two different ways. For let $\alpha_{in+1}, \alpha_{in+2}, \cdots, \alpha_{(i+1)n}$ be again a set of multipliers permuted by the subgroup G' of order n. The system of numbers λ_{jk} given by the array

$$\begin{Vmatrix} E_1, & 0, & \cdots, & 0 \\ 0, & E_2, & \cdots, & 0 \\ \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot \\ \cdot & \cdot & \cdots, & E_{p'} \end{Vmatrix},$$

$$E_{i+1} \equiv \begin{Vmatrix} g_1(\alpha_{in+1}), & g_2(\alpha_{in+1}), & \cdots, & g_n(\alpha_{in+1}) \\ g_n(\alpha_{in+2}), & g_1(\alpha_{in+2}), & \cdots, & g_{n-1}(\alpha_{in+2}) \\ \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot \\ \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot \\ g_2(\alpha_{(i+1)n}), & g_3(\alpha_{(i+1)n}), & \cdots, & g_1(\alpha_{(i+1)n}) \end{Vmatrix},$$

where the (g)'s are arbitrary polynomials of degree $2p - 1$ with rational coefficients, defines a complex multiplication, and as we have here a linear system with $2np = 1 + h$ parameters, every multiplication is of this type.

We may also obtain the multiplications in a different manner. The multiplications of the matrix Ω' to which Ω was reduced in No. 92, which depends upon those obtained by transforming the submatrix ω into itself or into another like it, are of the general type $\| E_{\mu\nu} \|$ $(\mu, \nu = 1, 2, \cdots, n)$, where the (E)'s are

matrices representing multiplications of ω, that is of the type

$$E_{\mu\nu} \equiv \left\| \begin{matrix} g_{\mu\nu}(\beta_1), & 0, & \cdots, & 0 \\ 0, & g_{\mu\nu}(\beta_2), & \cdots, & 0 \\ \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot \\ \cdot & \cdot & \cdots, & g_{\mu\nu}(\beta_{p'}) \end{matrix} \right\|,$$

where the (g)'s are arbitrary polynomials of degree $2p' - 1$ with rational coefficients. As we have here again $2n^2 p' = 1 + h$ distinct multiplications of Ω', all its multiplications are of this type.—On the other hand if Λ, Λ' are corresponding multiplications of Ω, Ω', we have $\Lambda' = M\Lambda M^{-1}$, where M is a definite square matrix of order p. Hence having obtained all the multiplications of one of them, we may say that we also possess all those of the other.

It is of interest to consider the multipliers η_i of Λ, which are the same as those of Λ'. The latter being assumed as the multiplication written above, on forming the equation in the (η)'s, we see at once that it is obtained by multiplying the left-hand sides of the p' equations of degree n

$$\phi(\eta;\, \beta_i) = |g_{\mu\nu}(\beta_i) - \epsilon_{\mu\nu}\,\eta| = 0$$
$$(i = 1, 2, \cdots, p'; \quad \mu, \nu = 1, 2, \cdots, n; \quad \epsilon_{\mu\nu} = 1; \quad \epsilon_{\mu\nu} = 0, \mu \neq \nu),$$

where ϕ is a polynomial in η and β_i with rational coefficients, and moreover the conjugates $\eta_{p+1}, \eta_{p+2}, \cdots, \eta_{2p}$ of the (η)'s satisfy the equations $\phi(\eta;\, \beta_{p'+i}) = 0$. Two cases may now present themselves: (*a*) These $2p'$ equations have all the same roots. Then $\phi(\eta;\, \beta_i) = 0$ reduces to an equation $\phi(\eta) = 0$ in η alone, of degree at most n. We can take for ϕ an arbitrary polynomial with rational coefficients since Ω' is equivalent to a matrix composed with arrays

$$\tau \equiv \|\tau_{j1}, \tau_{j2}, \cdots, \tau_{j,\,2p'}\|, \quad \|1, \eta_j, \eta_j^2, \cdots, \eta_j^{n-1}\| \qquad (j = 1, 2, \cdots, p),$$

where η_j is an arbitrary root of $\phi(\eta) = 0$, and the array τ is composed of the matrix ω superposed n times. Generally speaking we shall obtain all the multiplications of the nature here considered if we succeed in forming all the polynomials with rational coefficients $g_{\mu\nu}(\beta_i)$ such that the coefficients of the polynomial $\phi(\eta;\, \beta_i)$ in η are independent of β_i, that is, are rational numbers. (*b*) Among the $2p'$ equations in the multipliers η_i there are at least two whose roots are not the same. In this case the adjunction of one of the (β)'s to the domain of rationality brings about the reduction of the equation in the multipliers if that equation is not reducible already. In particular, if the new multiplication does not transform into themselves certain submatrices and if it is of degree $> n$, the equation in the multipliers is necessarily reducible in the domain of rationality $K(\beta_i)$, hence in the domain $K(\alpha_i)$.

94. To complete this investigation it is necessary to compare from the point

of view of isomorphism two matrices

$$\Omega \equiv \| 1, \alpha_{j_n}, \alpha_{j_n}^2, \cdots, \alpha_{j_n}^{2p-1} \| ; \quad \Omega' \equiv \| 1, \alpha_{h_n}, \alpha_{h_n}^2, \cdots, \alpha_{h_n}^{2p-1} \|$$

$(n = 1, 2, \cdots, p)$, corresponding to the same equation $F(\alpha) = 0$.

In order that Ω, Ω' be isomorphic there must exist a simultaneous bilinear form

$$\sum c_{\mu\nu} x_\mu y_\nu .$$

By reasoning as at the beginning of § 2, we see that we must have

$$\sum_{\mu,\nu} c_{\mu\nu} (\alpha_j^{\mu-1} \alpha_h^{\nu-1} - \alpha_j^{\nu-1} \alpha_h^{\mu-1}) = 0$$

whenever (α_j, α_h) is a pair of roots derived from the pairs $(\alpha_{j_m}, \alpha_{h_n})$ $(m, n = 1, 2, \cdots, p)$, by the substitutions of the group G. If the pairs thus derived include all pairs of roots, the system of equations will have as many independent equations as there are unknowns $c_{\mu\nu}$, and these unknowns will all be zero so that Ω, Ω' will not be isomorphic.

Thus as a condition for isomorphism, we find that it must not be possible to derive from the pairs $(\alpha_{j_m}, \alpha_{h_n})$ all the possible pairs of roots. Let (α_q, α_r) be an excluded pair and U, T substitutions of G such that $\alpha_r = U\alpha_q$, $\alpha_{j_m} = T\alpha_q$. It must not be possible for T to permute α_r with an α_{h_n}, hence T must permute it with an α_{h_n}, and therefore $T\alpha_r = S\alpha_{h_n}$. It follows that $TU\alpha_q = S\alpha_{h_n} = U\alpha_{j_m}$, which shows that SU permutes the set $(\alpha_{j_1}, \alpha_{j_2}, \cdots, \alpha_{j_p})$ with the set $(\alpha_{h_1}, \alpha_{h_2}, \cdots, \alpha_{h_p})$. Thus in order that Ω and Ω' be isomorphic, it is necessary that there exist a subgroup of G permuting these two sets.

Conversely let T be a substitution permuting these two sets. No pair $(\alpha_{j_1}, \alpha_{h_1})$ may be permuted with $(\alpha_m, ST\alpha_m)$. For let U be the substitution of G such that $U\alpha_{j_1} = \alpha_m$. We must have $U\alpha_{h_1} = ST\alpha_m$, hence $\alpha_{h_1} = ST\alpha_{j_1}$, from which would follow that α_{h_1} belongs to both sets $(\alpha_{h_1}, \alpha_{h_2}, \cdots, \alpha_{h_p})$, $(\bar{\alpha}_{h_1}, \alpha_{h_2}, \cdots, \bar{\alpha}_{h_p})$—an impossibility. Hence Ω, Ω' certainly possess a simultaneous form. If they are pure this is sufficient to insure their isomorphism. Assume that they are impure, and let ω, ω' be the corresponding pure matrices after the manner of No. 92, β_j, β_j' the quantities analogous to those already designated by similar letters corresponding to these two matrices. It is seen at once that since the sets $(\alpha_{j_1}, \alpha_{j_2}, \cdots, \alpha_{j_p})$, $(\alpha_{h_1}, \alpha_{h_2}, \cdots, \alpha_{h_p})$ are permuted by some substitution of G, the subgroups which maintain them invariant coincide. Hence ω, ω' are of the same genus p', and the (β)'s and (β')'s can be taken as roots of one and the same irreducible equation of degree $2p'$. Moreover to

$$\beta_j = \alpha_{n(j-1)} + \alpha_{n(j-1)+1} + \cdots + \alpha_{nj}$$

corresponds

$$\beta_j' = T\alpha_{n(j-1)} + T\alpha_{n(j-1)+1} + \cdots + T\alpha_{nj} .$$

Hence the sets $(\beta_1, \beta_2, \cdots, \beta_{p'})$, $(\beta'_1, \beta'_2, \cdots, \beta'_{p'})$ are permuted by a substitution of the group of the equation in the (β)'s and therefore ω, ω' are isomorphic, from which follows that this is also the case for Ω, Ω'. Thus *in order that Ω, Ω' be isomorphic, it is necessary and sufficient that there exist a substitution of the group G permuting their sets of multipliers.*

Corollary. The number of essentially distinct matrices belonging to $F(\alpha)$ is equal to its number of classes of transitively permutable sets of p roots.

This ends the discussion of the case where $F(\alpha)$ is irreducible, Abelian.

§ 4. Characteristic equation of type $[f(\alpha)]^r = 0$, $r > 1$. (*a*) Generalities

95. We assume of course $f(\alpha)$ irreducible and shall denote its degree as previously by q. The matrix Ω is composed with two arrays

$$\tau \equiv \| \tau_{j1}, \tau_{j2}, \cdots, \tau_{jr} \|, \quad \| 1, \alpha_j, \alpha_j^2, \cdots, \alpha_j^{q-1} \| \qquad (j = 1, 2, \cdots, p;\ qr = 2p),$$

where the (α)'s are roots of $f(\alpha) = 0$. We recall that if α_j is real it must be double root of $f = 0$, hence r must be even.

In order that Ω be a Riemann matrix it is necessary that there exist rational numbers $c_{\mu\nu}^{mn}$, such that

$$(11) \qquad \sum_{m,n}^{1\ldots q} \sum_{\mu,\nu}^{1\ldots r} c_{\mu\nu}^{mn} (\alpha_j^{m-1} \alpha_h^{n-1} \tau_{j\mu} \tau_{h\nu} - \alpha_j^{n-1} \alpha_h^{m-1} \tau_{j\nu} \tau_{h\mu}) = 0 \qquad (j, h = 1, 2, \cdots, p).$$

Let us set

$$\gamma_{\mu\nu}(\alpha_j, \alpha_h) = \sum_{m,n} c_{\mu\nu}^{mn} \alpha_j^{m-1} \alpha_h^{n-1} \qquad (\gamma_{\mu\nu}(x, y) = -\gamma_{\nu\mu}(y, x)).$$

We may say that the array τ will possess the bilinear forms

$$(12) \qquad \sum_{\mu,\nu} \gamma_{\mu\nu}(\alpha_j, \alpha_h) x_\mu y_\nu \qquad (j, h = 1, 2, \cdots, p),$$

in the sense that the particular form corresponding to (α_j, α_h) must vanish when we replace in it the (x)'s by the elements of the j-th row and the (y)'s by those of the h-th column. We shall say for the sake of simplicity that this form (12) is a bilinear form of Ω.

In order that Ω be a Riemann matrix, it is necessary besides that

$$(13) \qquad \sum_{j,h}^{1\ldots p} A_{jh} x_j \bar{x}_h; \quad A_{jh} = \frac{-1}{2i} \sum \gamma_{\mu\nu}(\alpha_j, \bar{\alpha}_h) \tau_{j\mu} \bar{\tau}_{h\nu}$$

be a positive definite Hermitian form. We shall assume this condition fulfilled for the present and will return to it later. The relations thus imposed upon the elements of τ do not determine them completely and they will depend in general upon a certain number of essential parameters. We have

thus classes of Riemann matrices and our object will be to determine the invariants of the most general matrix of a given class.

96. Assume then that there exists a single form (12). What are the invariants of Ω? The numbers $c_{\mu\nu}^{mn}$ corresponding to a given Riemann form must always satisfy the relations (11) and as the $\gamma_{\mu\nu}(\alpha_j, \alpha_h)$ are uniquely determined up to a factor of proportionality necessarily rational in α_j, α_h, we have

$$\sum_{m,n}^{1\cdots q} c_{\mu\nu}^{mn} \alpha_j^{m-1} \alpha_h^{n-1} = \phi_{jh}(\alpha_j, \alpha_h)\gamma_{\mu\nu}(\alpha_j, \alpha_h) \qquad (j \neq h; j, h = 1, 2, \cdots, p),$$

where ϕ_{jh} is a polynomial with rational coefficients. The left-hand side must be changed in sign when we interchange at the same time j, h and μ, ν. Hence

$$\phi_{jh}(\alpha_j, \alpha_h) = \phi_{jh}(\alpha_h, \alpha_j) = \phi_{hj}(\alpha_h, \alpha_j),$$

that is, ϕ_{jh} must be symmetrical in α_j and α_h. Moreover if the group G of $f(\alpha) = 0$ permutes the pairs (α_j, α_h) and $(\alpha_{j'}, \alpha_{h'})$, then it is necessary that $\phi_{jh}(x, y) = \phi_{j'h'}(x, y)$. Finally if there are equal roots among the multipliers $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \cdots, \alpha_p$, say $\alpha_j = \alpha_{j'}$—which is certainly the case if $r > 2$ —and if moreover the quantities $\gamma_{\mu\nu}(\alpha_j, \alpha_j)$ are not all zero, we will have to consider a unique function $\phi^j(\alpha_j) = \phi_{jj'}(\alpha_j, \alpha_{j'})$. This will certainly occur when the (α)'s are all real, for then in order that (13) be definite none of the quantities A_{jj} must be zero, hence the expressions $\gamma_{\mu\nu}(\alpha_j, \bar{\alpha}_j) = \gamma_{\mu\nu}(\alpha_j, \alpha_j)$ must not all be zero either.

Given the (γ)'s and the (ϕ)'s, the numbers $c_{\mu\nu}^{mn}$, when μ, ν are assigned, satisfy a system of non-homogeneous linear equations whose number is determined thus:

(*a*) Among the multipliers $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \cdots, \alpha_p$ two at least are equal. Let then s be the number of pairs of distinct roots derived from the pairs α_j, α_h; $j, h < p$, by the substitutions of G. When $\mu \neq \nu$ there are $2s + q$ equations and when $\mu = \nu$ there are s of them.

(*b*) The multipliers $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \cdots, \alpha_p$ form without repetition the totality of the roots of $f(\alpha) = 0$. This occurs only when $p = q$, $r = 2$. The number of equations is then $q(q-1)$ or $\frac{1}{2}q(q-1)$ according as $\mu \neq \nu$ or $\mu = \nu$.

But as we have seen in § 2, the left-hand sides of the equations in the $(c_{\mu\nu})$'s, when these unknowns are considered as variables, are linearly independent. Hence when the (γ)'s and the (ϕ)'s are given we have a solution with

$$r\left[\binom{q}{2} - s\right] + 2\binom{r}{2}\left[\binom{q}{2} - s\right] = r^2\left[\binom{q}{2} - s\right]$$

arbitrary parameters in the first case and with $q = p$ of them in the second.

It remains to determine the number of systems

$$\phi^1_{jh}, \phi^2_{jh}, \cdots, \phi^n_{jh}; \phi^1(\alpha_j), \phi^2(\alpha_j), \cdots, \phi^n(\alpha_j)$$

such that there exist no relations

$$\sum_{t=1}^{n} \lambda_t \phi^t_{jh}(\alpha_j, \alpha_h) = 0, \quad \sum_{t=1}^{n} \lambda_t \phi^t(\alpha_j) = 0,$$

where the (λ)'s are rational numbers and where we must replace in the second relation α_j successively by all the roots of $f(\alpha) = 0$, and in the first (α_j, α_h) by all the pairs of distinct roots, derived from those for which $j, h \leqq p$, by the substitutions of G. Moreover, in case (b) or in case (a) when the $\gamma_{\mu\nu}(\alpha_j, \alpha_j)$ are all zero we must make $\phi(\alpha_j) \equiv 0$. Between the symmetrical functions $\alpha_j^m \alpha_h^n + \alpha_j^n \alpha_h^m$ of two assigned roots there must exist a certain number t_i of linear homogeneous relations with integral coefficients, and these relations will still be satisfied by the symmetrical functions of two roots $T\alpha_j$, $T\alpha_h$, where T is an arbitrary substitution of G. The number t_i of linearly independent symmetrical functions characterizes therefore not so much the pair (α_j, α_h) as the set of pairs of roots which are transitively permutable with it by the substitutions of G,—and to each set of transitively permutable pairs of roots corresponds such an integer. Let finally ϵ be a number $= 0$ if $\phi(\alpha_j) \equiv 0$ and $= +1$ if $\phi(\alpha_j) \not\equiv 0$. A very simple discussion shows then that in case (a)

$$1 + k = \epsilon q + \sum t_i + r^2 \left[\binom{q}{2} - s \right],$$

while in case (b)

$$1 + k = \sum t_i + p.$$

The determination of h can be made in a similar manner. If we assume the array τ as general as possible, there will be no other relations between its elements than those which follow from the existence of (11). A non-alternate bilinear form must then correspond to the relations

$$\sum_{m,n}^{1\ldots q} \sum_{\mu,\nu}^{1\ldots r} c^{mn}_{\mu\nu} \alpha_j^{m-1} \alpha_h^{n-1} \tau_{j\mu} \tau_{h\nu} = 0 \qquad (j, h = 1, 2, \cdots, p),$$

whence we will derive as before

$$\sum_{m,n} c^{mn}_{\mu\nu} \alpha_j^{m-1} \alpha_h^{n-1} = \phi_{jh}(\alpha_j, \alpha_h) \gamma_{\mu\nu}(\alpha_j, \alpha_h), \tag{14}$$

where ϕ_{jh} is no more constrained to be symmetrical. We shall now have to consider as distinct the pairs of roots (α_j, α_h) and (α_h, α_j), and in place of t_i we shall be led to introduce an integer t'_i to denote the number of products $\alpha_j^m \alpha_h^n$ between which there exists no linear relation with integral coefficients.

Finally, we have

$$1 + h = \epsilon q + \sum t'_i + 2r^2\left[\binom{q}{2} - s\right]$$

in case (a), ϵ having the same meaning as previously, while in case (b)

$$1 + h = \sum t'_i + p.$$

If there exists a non-identically zero solution of the equations (11) and (14) and the (γ)'s are not all zero, it will be necessary to add to k and h respectively the numbers

$$r^2\left[\binom{q}{2} - s\right], \qquad 2r^2\left[\binom{q}{2} - s\right]$$

in case (a), and the same number p in case (b).

Remark: It is not difficult to extend these formulas to the case where Ω possesses several bilinear forms of the type considered. However, the results obtained are not simple and it is preferable to establish them directly in the few cases where this extension will be needed.

97. As an application of the preceding considerations, consider the case where $f(\alpha) = 0$ is as general as possible and of degree $q > 2$. The group G is then the symmetrical group, hence doubly transitive. There will then be a single integer $t_i = t$ and a single integer $t'_i = t'$. To find t' observe that the equations in the unknowns d_{mn},

$$\sum_{m,n}^{1\cdots q} d_{mn}\,\alpha_j^{m-1}\,\alpha_h^{n-1} = 0 \qquad (j, h = 1, 2, \cdots, q;\ j \neq h), \tag{15}$$

possess q independent rational solutions. Hence there are

$$q^2 - q = q(q-1) = t'$$

products $\alpha_j^m\,\alpha_h^n$ between which there exist no linear relations with integral coefficients, and therefore $1 + h = q(q-1) + \epsilon q$. The number of distinct symmetrical functions formed with the products

$$\alpha_j^m\,\alpha_h^n \qquad (m, n < q) \qquad \text{is equal to} \qquad \tfrac{1}{2}q(q-1) + q = \tfrac{1}{2}q(q+1).$$

But between them there are as many linear relations with integral coefficients as there are independent solutions of the equations in the unknowns d_{mn},

$$\sum_{m,n}^{1\cdots q} d_{mn}\left(\alpha_j^{m-1}\,\alpha_h^{n-1} + \alpha_j^{n-1}\,\alpha_h^{m-1}\right) = 0 \qquad (j, h = 1, 2, \cdots, q;\ j \neq h).$$

But these equations are linear combinations of the equations (15), and the manner in which they have been obtained shows that they are independent like the equations (15) themselves. They possess therefore

$\frac{1}{2}q(q+1) - \frac{1}{2}q(q-1) = q$ independent solutions and hence

$$1 + k = t = \frac{q(q+1)}{2} - q = \frac{q(q-1)}{2}.$$

98. We shall now examine more closely the *conditions of existence of* Ω. Let us return to the form (12). We may define two polynomials with integral coefficients

$$\gamma'_{\mu\nu}(x, y) = \sum_{m,n}^{1\cdots q} d^{mn}_{\mu\nu} x^{m-1} y^{n-1},$$
$$\gamma''_{\mu\nu}(x) = \sum_{m=1}^{q} d^{m}_{\mu\nu} x^{m-1}$$

by the relations

$$\gamma'_{\mu\nu}(\alpha_j, \alpha_k) = \gamma_{\mu\nu}(\alpha_j, \alpha_h) \qquad (\alpha_j, \alpha_k \text{ are any two different roots});$$
$$\gamma'_{\mu\nu}(\alpha_j, \alpha_j) = 0; \qquad \gamma''_{\mu\nu}(\alpha_j) = \gamma_{\mu\nu}(\alpha_j, \alpha_j) \qquad (j = 1, 2, \cdots, 2p).$$

Consider the elements of a given row of τ as homogeneous point coördinates in an S_{r-1}—this is the generalization of Scorza's habitual point of view. To the r_j rows corresponding to α_j (r_j is the number of times that α_j is found among the multipliers), say

$$\begin{array}{cccc} \tau'_{11}, & \tau'_{12}, & \cdots, & \tau'_{1r} \\ \tau'_{21}, & \cdot & \cdots, & \cdot \\ \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot \\ \tau'_{r_j1}, & \cdot & \cdots, & \tau'_{r_jr} \end{array}$$

will correspond an S_{r_j-1}. The equations (11) can be interpreted as follows:

(*a*) S_{r_j-1} and S_{r_k-1} must be conjugate spaces relatively to the reciprocity

$$\sum_{\mu,\nu}^{1\cdots r} \gamma'_{\mu\nu}(\alpha_j, \alpha_k) x_\mu y_\nu = 0.$$

(*b*) Any two points of S_{r_j-1} are conjugate relatively to the linear complex

$$\sum_{\mu,\nu}^{1\cdots r} \gamma''_{\mu\nu}(\alpha_j) x_\mu y_\nu = 0.$$

(*c*) In the Hermitian form (13) let us annul all variables corresponding to roots other than α_j. The remaining expression is, with a change in the indices of the (x)'s,

$$-\frac{1}{2i} \sum_{h,k}^{1\cdots r_j} \sum_{\mu,\nu}^{1\cdots r} \gamma_{\mu\nu}(\alpha_j, \bar{\alpha}_j) \tau_{h\mu} \tau_{k\nu} x_h \bar{x}_k.$$

It must be positive for all non-zero values of the (x)'s. Now it may be written

$$-\frac{1}{2i} \sum_{\mu,\nu}^{1\cdots r} \gamma_{\mu\nu}(\alpha_j, \bar{\alpha}_j) \sum_{h=1}^{r_j} \tau'_{h\mu} x_h \sum_{k=1}^{r_j} \bar{\tau}'_{k\nu} \bar{x}_k,$$

which shows that this amounts to requiring that the Hermitian form

$$-\frac{1}{2i}\sum_{\mu,\nu}^{1\cdots r}\gamma_{\mu\nu}(\alpha_j,\bar{\alpha}_j)x_\mu\bar{x}_\nu$$

be positive for all points of S_{r_j-1}.

99. The condition (c) may be interpreted in two distinct ways according as α_j is real or complex:

(c') If α_j is real it is equivalent to demanding that the real complex

$$\sum\gamma''_{\mu\nu}(\alpha_j)x_\mu y_\nu = 0$$

contain no real straight line resting on S_{r_j-1}.

(c'') If α_j is complex the Hermitian form

$$-\frac{1}{2i}\sum\gamma'_{\mu\nu}(\alpha_j,\bar{\alpha}_j)x_\mu y_\nu$$

must be positive at all points of S_{r_j-1}.

The conditions (a), (b), (c'), (c'') are necessary but may not be sufficient. Hence if there exist Riemann matrices for which these conditions but no others are fulfilled, these matrices will certainly be as general as possible of their type, and their invariants will be as small as possible.

Returning to (c''), denote for the present by $S_{r'_j-1}$ the space corresponding to α_j. The Hermitian form above may also be written

$$\frac{1}{2i}\sum\gamma'_{\mu\nu}(\alpha_j,\bar{\alpha}_j)x_\mu\bar{x}_\nu = -\frac{1}{2i}\sum\gamma'_{\mu\nu}(\alpha_j,\bar{\alpha}_j)\bar{x}_\mu x_\nu.$$

This shows that it must be positive at all points of S_{r_j-1} and negative at all those of $\bar{S}_{r'_j-1}$, conjugate space of $S_{r'_j-1}$.

Now it is known from classical theorems on Hermitian forms that by means of a transformation

$$x'_\mu = \sum_{\nu=1}^{r}\lambda_{\mu\nu}x_\nu; \qquad \bar{x}'_\mu = \sum_{\nu=1}^{r}\bar{\lambda}_{\mu\nu}\bar{x}_\nu \qquad (\mu = 1, 2, \cdots, r)$$

our form may be reduced to the type

$$\sum a_\mu x'_\mu\bar{x}'_\mu,$$

where the (a)'s are real. If we consider the transformation on the (x)'s as applied to the points of S_{r_j-1} and of $\bar{S}_{r'_j-1}$, and that on the $(\bar{x})$'s to the points of $S_{r'_j-1}$, we see that the mutual relations of the three spaces S, S', $\bar{S}'$, transformed of the three preceding, are again the same as before in regard to the new Hermitian form. Now however we have the advantage that the new form takes the same sign at S' and $\bar{S}'$, so that we have this situation: The spaces S and S' are conjugate with respect to the reciprocity obtained by making the

Hermitian form vanish, and the form takes the sign $+$ on the one and the sign $-$ on the other. We shall see later that this requires that $r = r_j + r'_j$. Hence the transformed form must not be degenerate and this holds also for the original one.

100. Let us make a few remarks concerning the equation $f(\alpha) = 0$ when it has mixed real and complex roots. We may show that in this case the integers r_j cannot in general be taken arbitrarily. For assume that the group G of the equation is doubly transitive, that is, permutes transitively all the pairs of roots. If one of the reciprocities

$$\sum \gamma'_{\mu\nu}(\alpha_j, \alpha_k) x_\mu y_\nu = 0$$

is degenerate so will all the others be, since when the determinant

$$|\gamma'_{\mu\nu}(\alpha_j, \alpha_k)| \qquad (\mu, \nu = 1, 2, \cdots, r)$$

is zero for a pair of distinct roots, it will be zero for all of them. But as we have just seen this reciprocity is certainly not degenerate for $\alpha_j = \bar{\alpha}_k$, hence it is never degenerate when $\alpha_j \neq \alpha_k$.

Assume now α_j real, α_k still complex. S_{r_j-1} and S_{r_k-1} are conjugate relatively to the non-degenerate reciprocity

$$\sum \gamma'_{\mu\nu}(\alpha_j, \alpha_k) x_\mu y_\nu = 0,$$

hence $r_j - 1 + r_k - 1 = r - 2$. But $r_j = \frac{1}{2}r$, hence $r_k = \frac{1}{2}r$ also. Thus all the (r)'s must have the value $\frac{1}{2}r$, that is, among the multipliers must be found every root of $f(\alpha) = 0$ taken the same number of times.

Let us return to the Hermitian form

$$-\frac{1}{2i}\sum \gamma'_{\mu\nu}(\alpha_j, \alpha_j) x_\mu \bar{x}_\nu.$$

It will have one sign on S_{r_j-1} and another on $\bar{S}_{r'_j-1}$. Hence, as we shall see below, the equation of degree r in δ,

$$|\gamma'_{\mu\nu}(\alpha_j, \alpha_j) - \epsilon_{\mu\nu}\cdot\delta| = 0 \qquad (\epsilon_{\mu\mu} = 1;\ \epsilon_{\mu\nu} = 0,\ \mu \neq \nu),$$

must have $\frac{1}{2}r$ positive roots and $\frac{1}{2}r$ negative roots. There is here considerable restriction imposed upon the form (12).

An interesting case of mixed equation has been investigated by Frobenius, —the case of the characteristic equation of a principal transformation. Frobenius does not give himself an arbitrary equation $f(\alpha) = 0$ but assumes a definite Riemann projectivity and starts from the equation

$$|b_{\mu\nu} - \epsilon_{\mu\nu}\cdot\alpha| = 0,$$

showing that, given such an equation, there always corresponds to it a suitable Riemann matrix.

101. Before continuing, let us examine rapidly the lower limits which may be assigned to h and k in some simple cases. First, if the multiplication has real multipliers, we will have necessarily $\epsilon = 1$, on account of (*b*) and (*c*′), hence $1 + h \geqq q$, $1 + k \geqq q$. Assume the multipliers all imaginary, hence $q = 2q'$. According to (*a*) and (*c*″) the expressions $\gamma_{\mu\nu}(\alpha_j, \alpha_j)$ must not all be zero. The group G of $f(\alpha) = 0$ may permute transitively a pair $(\alpha_j, \bar{\alpha}_j)$ with other pairs of roots.—Let $(\alpha_1', \alpha_1''), \cdots, (\alpha_{q''}', \alpha_{q''}'')$ be one of the sets thus transitively permuted and including a pair of conjugate roots. We have $\sum q'' \geqq q'$ and the (q'')'s are all > 1, if $q > 2$, else $f(\alpha)$ would be reducible. There can be no such relation as

$$\sum_{m,n}^{1\ldots q''} c_{mn}\, \alpha_j'^{\,m-1}\, \alpha_h''^{\,n-1} = 0 \qquad (j, h = 1, 2, \cdots, q''),$$

since the Vandermonde determinants of the (α')'s and (α'')'s are not zero. Similarly there can be no such relations as

$$\sum_{m,n}^{1\ldots q''} c_{mn}\,(\alpha_j'^{\,m-1}\, \alpha_h''^{\,n-1} + \alpha_j'^{\,n-1}\, \alpha_h''^{\,m-1}) = 0 \qquad (j, h = 1, 2, \cdots, q'').$$

Hence,

$$\sum t_i \geqq \sum \frac{q''(q''-1)}{2} \geqq \sum \frac{(q''-1)^2}{2} + \tfrac{1}{2} \sum q'',$$

and therefore if $q > 2$, $1 + k > \frac{1}{4}q$. Moreover since there are obviously q independent multiplications—namely q powers of the given one—we have $1 + h \geqq q$. These limits are obviously correct a fortiori if Ω is impure with submatrices invariant under the Riemann projectivity considered. In particular $k = 0$, $h > 0$ is possible only if $f(\alpha) = 0$ is a quadratic equation with imaginary roots. We shall return to this later.

§ 5. The characteristic equation is of type $[f(\alpha)]^r = 0$. (*b*) Two important special cases

102. *Real multipliers** $(r = 2p' > 2)$. When the multipliers are real, the integers r_j are all equal to p' and the only conditions to be satisfied are (*b*) and (*c*′). By a slight change in our notation we may say that it is first necessary that the points of S_{r_j-1} be conjugated to each other with respect to the linear complex

$$\sum_{\mu,\nu}^{1\ldots 2p'} \gamma_{\mu\nu}(\alpha_j)\, x_\mu\, y_\nu = 0. \tag{16}$$

Next at all points of S_{r_j-1} we must have

$$-\frac{1}{2i} \sum \gamma_{\mu\nu}(\alpha_j)\, x_\mu\, \bar{x}_\nu > 0.$$

* (Added in 1922.) See *Comptes Rendus du Congrès de Strasbourg* (1921).

Consider the matrix

$$\tau_j \equiv \| \tau^j_{h1},\ \tau^j_{h2},\ \cdots,\ \tau^j_{h,\,2p'} \| \qquad (j = 1, 2, \cdots, p'),$$

formed with the rows of τ which correspond to α_j. The last condition just stated is equivalent to requiring that the Hermitian forms

$$(17) \qquad \sum_{h,k}^{1\cdots p} A^j_{hk}\, x_h\, \bar{x}_k, \qquad A^j_{hk} = -\frac{1}{2i} \sum_{\mu,\nu}^{1\cdots 2p'} \gamma_{\mu\nu}(\alpha_j)\, \tau^j_{h\mu}\, \bar{\tau}^j_{k\nu}$$

be definite positive. Under these conditions I say that (16) defines a principal Riemann form of Ω. For we may determine a Riemann form

$$\sum \delta_{\mu\nu}(\alpha_j, \alpha_k)\, x_\mu\, y_\nu,$$

with coefficients $\delta_{\mu\nu}$ satisfying the relations

$$\delta_{\mu\nu}(\alpha_j, \alpha_k) = 0 \qquad (\alpha_j \neq \alpha_k),$$
$$\delta_{\mu\nu}(\alpha_j, \alpha_j) = \gamma_{\mu\nu}(\alpha_j),$$

since the equations for the coefficients of the polynomials $\delta_{\mu\nu}$ always have at least one rational solution. On the other hand the Hermitian form corresponding to this Riemann form reduces to the sum of the forms (17),—it is therefore definite positive.

We may remark that in all cases if (16) corresponds to a non-principal-alternate form, the corresponding Hermitian form is the sum of the q forms (17), hence its genus is the sum of their genera.

Let us return to τ_j. It is clear that the conditions imposed upon this matrix are identical with the conditions imposed upon a Riemann matrix of genus p', except that the coefficients of the principal alternate form which occurs in the definition of these matrices are only subjected to being numbers of the algebraic domain $K(\alpha_j)$ but not necessarily rational numbers. We may say that τ_j is a Riemann matrix belonging to this algebraic domain.

103. By a transformation of coördinates with coefficients rational with respect to those of the complex (16), that is, with coefficients belonging to the domain $K(\alpha_j)$, we may reduce the equation of this complex to the form

$$\sum_{\mu=1}^{p'} e_\mu(\alpha_j)(x_\mu\, y_{p'+\mu} - x_{p'+\mu}\, y_\mu),$$

where the (e)'s are numbers of the same domain.* This is equivalent to applying a certain transformation of isomorphism upon Ω. By following up this transformation with q others applied each to the rows of τ_j, we shall reduce τ_j to the form

$$\left\| \begin{matrix} (e_1(\alpha_j))^{-1}, & 0, & \cdots, & 0, & a^j_{11}, & a^j_{12}, & \cdots, & a^j_{1p'} \\ 0, & (e_2(\alpha_j))^{-1}, & \cdots, & 0, & a^j_{21}, & a^j_{22}, & \cdots, & \cdot \\ \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot \\ 0, & \cdot & \cdots, & (e_{p'}(\alpha_j))^{-1}, & a^j_{p'1}, & \cdot & \cdots, & a^j_{p'p'} \end{matrix} \right\|$$

* See for example Bertini, *Lezzioni sulla geometria proiettiva degli iperspazi*, page 106.

and if we set $a^{j}_{hk} = a'_{hk} + ia''_{hk}$ it is necessary that the quadratic forms $\sum a''_{hk}\, x_h\, y_k$ be all definite positive.

The class of matrices thus obtained depends upon $\frac{1}{2}qp'(p'+1) = \frac{1}{4}p(r+2)$ continuous parameters, and $qp' = p$ arbitrary integers—the integers which enter into the composition of the (e)'s, where we may assume the coefficients of the powers of the (α)'s equal to integers.

The invariants of the most general matrices of the class here considered are given by

$$1 + h = 1 + k = q,$$

since with the notations of § 4, the (ϕ_{jh})'s are zero, $s = \binom{q}{2}$ and the expressions $\phi(\alpha_j)$ are not zero.

104. Most of the properties of ordinary Riemann matrices belong also to those of the domain $K(\alpha_j)$. Let us indicate a few of them as well as their corollaries for Ω.

Assume that there exist $1 + k_1$ linearly independent complexes such as (16), say

$$\sum_{\mu,\nu}^{1\cdots 2p'} \gamma^{s}_{\mu\nu}(\alpha_j)\, x_\mu y_\nu = 0 \qquad (\gamma^{s}_{\mu\nu} = -\gamma^{s}_{\nu\mu}),$$

belonging to Ω. The equations in the coefficients $c^{mn}_{\mu\nu}$ of the alternate forms of Ω, analogous to the equations (14), become

$$\sum_{m,n}^{1\cdots q} c^{mn}_{\mu\nu}\, \alpha_j^{m-1}\, \alpha_h^{n-1} = 0 \qquad (\alpha_j \neq \alpha_h)$$

$$\sum_{m,n}^{1\cdots q} c^{mn}_{\mu\nu}\, \alpha_j^{m+n-2} = \sum_{s=1}^{1+k_1} \phi_s(\alpha_j)\, \gamma^{s}_{\mu\nu}(\alpha_j),$$

where the (ϕ)'s are polynomials with rational coefficients. They show that

$$1 + k = q(1 + k_1).$$

Similarly if there are $1 + h_1$ reciprocities

$$\sum_{\mu,\nu}^{1\cdots 2p'} \gamma^{s}_{\mu\nu}(\alpha_j)\, x_\mu\, y_\nu = 0,$$

then $1 + h = q(1 + h_1)$.

The matrix Ω will be pure if it does not possess any other bilinear forms of the type just defined (this we have tacitly assumed in the above formulas)—and if moreover none of these forms are degenerate.

We may apply to the matrices τ_j a transformation defined by the symbolic matrix-equation:

$$\tau'_j = \tau_j \cdot \| \beta_{\mu\nu}(\alpha_j) \| \qquad (\mu, \nu = 1, 2, \cdots, 2p'),$$

where the (β)'s are numbers of the domain $K(\alpha_j)$. Then we may apply to τ_j a linear transformation of the rows. If we do this simultaneously for every

τ_j we have a transformation of isomorphism of Ω. The matrices τ_j must be considered as impure if, for every j,

$$\tau_j' \equiv \left\| \begin{array}{cccc} \tau_1^j, & 0, & \cdots, & 0 \\ 0, & \tau_2^j, & \cdots, & 0 \\ \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot \\ 0, & \cdot & \cdots, & \tau_n^j \end{array} \right\|$$

where τ_h^j is a matrix with p_h' rows and $2p_h'$ columns, p_h' being independent of j. In this case Ω is isomorphic to a matrix of type (I), the submatrices ω_i being invariant under the Riemann projectivity considered. Such a condition will certainly arise if $1 + h_1 > 2p'$. In all cases, as Scorza showed for ordinary Riemann matrices, we have

$$1 + h_1 \leqq 2p'^2, \qquad 1 + k_1 \leqq p'^2,$$

hence

$$1 + h \leqq pr, \qquad 1 + k \leqq \tfrac{1}{2}pr.$$

When the indices h_1, k_1 have their maximum values, Ω is isomorphic to a matrix composed with an array τ such that

$$\tau_j \equiv \left\| \begin{array}{cccccc} 1, & \delta(\alpha_j), & 0, & 0, & \cdots, & 0 \\ 0, & 0, & 1, & \delta(\alpha_j), & \cdots, & 0 \\ \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot \\ 0, & 0, & \cdot & \cdot & 1, & \delta(\alpha_j) \end{array} \right\|$$

where $\delta(\alpha_j)$ is a quadratic number of the domain $K(\alpha_j)$ (Scorza).

The numbers h_1, k_1 may have lacunary values and they can be obtained as those of h, k have been obtained by Scorza.

If $h_1 > 0$, then there exists at least one complex multiplication T' permutable with the multiplication T whose multipliers are the (α)'s. There will then be a multiplication of degree $q' \geqq 2q$ permutable with both T and T' and we can investigate Ω by taking this multiplication as a starting point. But there may be advantage in considering directly the Riemann projectivities of τ_j, and if Ω is pure τ_j may be composed with two matrices

$$\| \theta_{k1}^j, \ \theta_{k2}^j, \ \cdots, \ \theta_{kr}^j \|, \qquad \| 1, \ \beta_{jk}, \ \beta_{jk}^2, \ \cdots, \ \beta_{jk}^{q'-1} \|$$

where the numbers β_{jk} are roots of an irreducible equation $f(\beta) = 0$ of degree $q' = 2p'/r'$ with coefficients in the same domain as already considered.

Let Ω' be another Riemann matrix of genus p possessing a Riemann projectivity having also $f(\alpha) = 0$ for characteristic equation and assume Ω and Ω' both pure. They will be isomorphic if there exists a simultaneous form

$$\sum_{\mu}^{r} \gamma_{\mu\nu}(\alpha_j) x_\mu y_\nu$$

which vanishes when the (x)'s are replaced by the elements of any row of τ_j

and the (y)'s by those of any row of τ'_j which corresponds to τ_j for Ω', this for $j = 1, 2, \cdots, p'$. If there exist λ_1 such forms, the simultaneous index of Ω, Ω' is $\lambda = q\lambda_1$.

In concluding, let us remark that the arithmetic properties of alternate forms belonging to ordinary Riemann matrices can be extended at once to those which we have here considered. For these propositions can in general be derived by purely arithmetic methods and without mentioning Abelian varieties at all. For example, the theorems given by Cotty in his thesis, on hyperelliptic surfaces and the corresponding forms, can be at once extended to τ_j when $r = 2p' = 4$.

105. *Real multipliers* $(r = 2p' = 2)$. When $r = 2$ and $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \cdots, \alpha_p$ include all the roots of $f(\alpha) = 0$ they must necessarily be real, at least when the array τ is as general as possible. For if

$$\sum_{\mu,\nu}^{1,2} \gamma_{\mu\nu}(\alpha_j, \alpha_k) x_\mu y_\nu \tag{18}$$

is an alternate form of Ω, it is necessary that $\gamma_{\mu\nu}(\alpha_j, \alpha_k) = 0$ if $\alpha_j \neq \alpha_k$, hence $\gamma_{\mu\nu}(\alpha_j, \bar{\alpha}_j) = 0$ if $\alpha_j \neq \bar{\alpha}_j$, and these matrices exist only if the (α)'s are all real. They are then of the type of matrices which we have just investigated. We may always arrange matters so that no τ_{j1} will be zero. If we divide then every term in the j-th row of Ω by τ_{j1}, the array τ will assume the form

$$\| 1, \tau_j \| \qquad (j = 1, 2, \cdots, p).$$

The arbitrary constants τ_j must be imaginary else Ω would have a row with elements all real. If the form (18) is an alternate form of Ω,

$$\gamma_{\mu\nu}(\alpha_j, \alpha_k) = -\gamma_{\nu\mu}(\alpha_k, \alpha_j), \qquad \gamma_{\mu\nu}(\alpha_j, \alpha_k) = 0 \text{ if } \alpha_k \neq \alpha_j;$$
$$\gamma_{\mu\nu}(\alpha_j, \alpha_j) \neq 0;$$

and hence $1 + k = q$. If on the contrary (18) is not an alternate form of Ω, and if the parameters τ_j remain entirely arbitrary it is necessary that

$$\gamma_{\mu\mu}(\alpha_j, \alpha_k) = 0 \quad (\mu = 1, 2); \quad \gamma_{12}(\alpha_j, \alpha_k) = \gamma_{21}(\alpha_j, \alpha_k) = 0 \text{ if } \alpha_j \neq \alpha_k;$$
$$\gamma_{12}(\alpha_j, \alpha_j) = -\gamma_{21}(\alpha_j, \alpha_j);$$

whence again $1 + h = q = p = 1 + k$.

Assume that (18) is an alternate form of Ω. The polynomial

$$\gamma(\alpha) = \gamma_{12}(\alpha, \alpha)$$

is after all merely an arbitrary polynomial of degree $q - 1$. The Hermitian form corresponding to (18) is

$$-\frac{1}{2i}\sum_{j=1}^{p} \gamma(\alpha_j)(\bar{\tau}_j - \tau_j) x_j \bar{x}_j = \sum_{j=1}^{p} \gamma(\alpha_j) \tau''_j x_j x_j \qquad (\tau_j = \tau'_j + i\tau''_j).$$

We can always take $\gamma(\alpha)$ such that the coefficients will all be positive, hence whatever the parameters τ_j, Ω is always a Riemann matrix. If we assume, as we have done so far, that $f(\alpha)$ is irreducible, then when one of the numbers $\gamma(\alpha_j)$ is zero they will all be. Since moreover none of the τ_j'' can be zero, whenever Ω possesses no other alternate forms than those of the above type, the Hermitian form is always of genus p and Ω is pure.

Can the matrix be pure and possess a new Riemann projectivity? In order that this be the case it must possess a bilinear form other than of the above type, say

$$\sum_{\mu,\nu}^{1,2} \beta_{\mu\nu}(\alpha_j, \alpha_k) x_\mu y_\nu,$$

imposing some relations between the parameters τ_j. Two cases are possible: (*a*) The expressions $\beta_{\mu\nu}(\alpha_j, \alpha_k)$ $(\alpha_j \neq \alpha_k)$ are all zero, but the $\beta_{\mu\nu}(\alpha_j, \alpha_j)$ are not. There will then be no new alternate form, hence $1 + h = 2p$, $1 + k = p$. The new complex multiplication is permutable with the former. The matrix Ω which is still pure possesses a Riemann projectivity with irreducible characteristic equation and we fall back upon the case studied in § 2. This is a consequence of the fact that the reciprocity

$$\sum_{\mu,\nu}^{1,2} \beta_{\mu\nu}(\alpha_j, \alpha_k) x_\mu y_\nu = 0$$

leaves the point $(1, \tau_j)$ invariant, hence the parameters τ are then quadratic conjugate numbers of the real domains $K(\alpha_j)$. The matrix Ω is then isomorphic to a matrix with array τ of type $\| 1, \sqrt{R(\alpha_j)} \|$, where $R(\alpha_j)$ is an integer of the same domain, negative together with all its conjugates. (*b*) The expressions $\beta_{\mu\nu}(\alpha_j, \alpha_k)$ $(\alpha_j \neq \alpha_k)$ are not all zero. In this case $1 + h = q + q(q-1) = p^2 > 2p$ if $p > 2$. Hence Ω is impure if $p > 2$. Thus if $r = 2$ and if the multipliers are all real, Ω if pure cannot possess more than two other Riemann projectivities, one of degree two and the other of degree $2p$, permutable with the given one.

106. *Imaginary multipliers.* We shall first consider a question concerning Hermitian forms.

Given the Hermitian form of genus r

$$\sum_{\mu=1}^{r} a_\mu x_\mu \bar{x}_\mu,$$

let $S_{r'-1}$, $S_{r''-1}$ be two spaces of S_r such that $r' + r'' = r$ and conjugated with respect to the reciprocity

$$\sum a_\mu x_\mu y_\mu = 0.$$

Under what conditions can the Hermitian form be positive at all points of the

first space and negative at all points of the second? The equations of $S_{r'-1}$ can be put in the form

$$x_{r'+\nu} = \sum_{\mu=1}^{r'} b_{\nu\mu}\, x_\mu \qquad (\nu = 1, 2, \cdots, r''),$$

and it will be necessary that

$$\sum_{\mu=1}^{r'} a_\mu\, x_\mu\, \bar{x}_\mu + \sum_{\nu=1}^{r''} a_{r'+\nu} \Big(\sum_{\mu=1}^{r'} b_{\nu\mu}\, x_\mu \Big) \Big(\sum_{\mu=1}^{r'} \bar{b}_{\nu\mu}\, \bar{x}_\mu \Big) > 0 .$$

This expression can certainly be made negative if it is possible to annul all the terms whose coefficients a_μ are positive without annulling the others. Let s' be the number that are positive and s'' the remaining. We shall have s' linear equations in r' unknowns and since they must not have any solutions, it is necessary that $r' \leqq s'$. Similarly we must have $r'' \leqq s''$, but $r' + r'' \geqq s' + s''$; hence $r' = s'$, $r'' = s''$. These conditions are besides sufficient. To see it we may consider the form

$$\sum_{\mu=1}^{r'} \bar{x}_\mu\, x_\mu - \sum_{\nu=1}^{r''} x_{r'+\nu}\, \bar{x}_{r'+\nu}$$

and the two conjugate spaces

$$S_{r'-1};\quad x_{r'+\nu} = \lambda_\nu\, x_1 \qquad (\nu = 1, 2, \cdots, r''),$$

$$S_{r''-1};\quad x_2 = x_3 = \cdots = x_{r'} = 0, \qquad x_1 = \sum_{\nu=1}^{r''} \lambda_\nu\, x_\nu,$$

where the (λ)'s satisfy the conditions

$$\sum \lambda_\nu\, \bar{\lambda}_\nu < 1 .$$

On $S_{r'-1}$ the Hermitian form becomes

$$(1 - \sum \lambda_\nu\, \bar{\lambda}_\nu)\, x_1\, \bar{x}_1 + \sum_{\mu=2}^{r'} x_\mu\, \bar{x}_\mu$$

and its sign is $+$. On $S_{r''-1}$ it reduces to

$$\begin{aligned}
&\sum_{\nu=1}^{r''} \lambda_\nu\, x_{r'+\nu} \sum_{\nu=1}^{r''} \bar{\lambda}_\nu\, \bar{x}_{r'+\nu} - \sum_{\nu=1}^{r''} x_{r'+\nu}\, \bar{x}_{r'+\nu} \\
&\quad = |\sum \lambda_\nu\, x_{r'+\nu}|^2 - \sum x_{r'+\nu}\, \bar{x}_{r'+\nu} \\
&\quad < (\sum |\lambda_\nu\, x_{r'+\nu}|)^2 - \sum |x_{r'+\nu}|^2 < \sum |\lambda_\nu|^2 \sum |x_{r'+\nu}|^2 - \sum |x_{r'+\nu}|^2 \\
&\quad = (-1 + \sum \bar{\lambda}_\nu\, \lambda_\nu) \sum |x_{r'+\nu}|^2 < 0,
\end{aligned}$$

as was desired. This shows also that there is an infinity of pairs of spaces answering the question.

107. We now pass to the study of matrices with imaginary multipliers. We shall limit ourselves to the case *where the group G of the equation $f(\alpha) = 0$ is permutable with the unique operation that permutes each root with its conjugate.* I say that in this case if there exists a form (12) satisfying only the conditions

(a) and (c''), Ω is a Riemann matrix. For let $\sum \beta_{\mu\nu}(\alpha_j, \alpha_k) x_\mu y_\nu$ be a form answering the question. We may determine polynomials with rational coefficients and of degree $q-1$ in α_j, α_k, say $\gamma_{\mu\nu}(\alpha_j, \alpha_k)$, by the relations

$$\gamma_{\mu\nu}(\alpha_j, \alpha_k) = 0 \quad \text{if} \quad \alpha_j \neq \alpha_k;$$
$$\gamma_{\mu\nu}(\alpha_j, \bar{\alpha}_j) = \beta_{\mu\nu}(\alpha_j, \bar{\alpha}_j).$$

That this is possible in view of the property assumed for the group of $f(\alpha) = 0$ follows from § 2, and we see then that the form

$$\sum \gamma_{\mu\nu}(\alpha_j, \alpha_k) x_\mu y_\nu \tag{19}$$

is a Riemann form of Ω. For, the spaces S_{r_j-1}, S_{r_k-1} will be conjugated with respect to the proper reciprocity, in particular S_{r_j-1}, $S_{r_j'-1}$ with respect to

$$\sum \gamma_{\mu\nu}(\alpha_j, \bar{\alpha}_j) x_\mu y_\nu = 0 \tag{20}$$

and the Hermitian forms

$$-\frac{1}{2i} \sum \gamma_{\mu\nu}(\alpha_j, \bar{\alpha}_j) x_\mu \bar{x}_\nu \tag{21}$$

will be positive at all points of S_{r_j-1} and negative at all points of $S_{r_j'-1}$. As the Hermitian form belonging to (19) is here the sum of the forms (21) it is definite positive, and Ω is effectively a Riemann matrix.

108. To establish the existence of matrices of the type considered it is sufficient to show that we can take polynomials with rational coefficients $\gamma_{\mu\nu}(\alpha_j, \bar{\alpha}_j)$, such that when the Hermitian form

$$-\frac{1}{2i} \sum \gamma_{\mu\nu}^{\bullet} x_\mu \bar{x}_\nu$$

is reduced to the type

$$\sum \gamma_\mu x_\mu \bar{x}_\mu,$$

r_j coefficients γ_μ are positive and r_j' negative. This is equivalent to requiring that of the r roots of the equation in γ (all real, as is well-known),

$$\left| -\frac{1}{2i} \gamma_{\mu\nu}(\alpha_j, \bar{\alpha}_j) - \epsilon_{\mu\nu} \cdot \gamma \right| = 0 \qquad (\epsilon_{\mu\mu} = 1;\ \epsilon_{\mu\nu} = 0,\ \mu \neq \nu),$$

r_j be positive and r_j' negative. Indeed, we can then determine polynomials with rational coefficients $\gamma'_{\mu\nu}(\alpha_j, \alpha_k)$ such that

$$\gamma'_{\mu\nu}(\alpha_j, \alpha_k) = 0 \quad \text{if} \quad \alpha_j \neq \alpha_k; \qquad \gamma'_{\mu\nu}(\alpha_j, \bar{\alpha}_j) = \gamma_{\mu\nu}(\alpha_j, \bar{\alpha}_j),$$

and also spaces S_{r_j}, $S_{r_j'-1}$ satisfying the conditions (a), (c'') relatively to

$$\sum \gamma'_{\mu\nu}(\alpha_j, \alpha_k) x_\mu y_\nu,$$

and there will therefore exist a Riemann matrix belonging to $f(\alpha) = 0$ and to the distribution $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \cdots, \alpha_p$ of its roots.

Now let us take rq numbers $\eta_{j\mu}$ such that with $\alpha_{j'} = \bar{\alpha}_j$,

$$\eta_{j,1} = \eta_{j,2} = \cdots = \eta_{j,r_j} = +1; \qquad \eta_{j,r_j+1} = \cdots = n_{j,r} = -1;$$
$$\eta_{j',1} = \eta_{j',2} = \cdots = \eta_{j',r_j} = -1; \qquad \eta_{j',r_j+1} = \cdots = \eta_{j',r} = +1,$$

and consider the equations

$$-\frac{1}{2i}\sum_{m,n}^{1\cdots q} c_{\mu\nu}^{mn}(\alpha_j^{m-1}\bar{\alpha}_j^{n-1} - \bar{\alpha}_j^{m-1}\alpha_j^{n-1}) = \eta_{j\mu} \qquad (j = 1, 2, \cdots, q;\ \mu = 1, 2, \cdots, r),$$

of which we shall take a type solution in real numbers $c_{\mu\nu}^{mn}$. Designate then by $-\frac{1}{2i}\delta_{\mu\mu}(\alpha_j, \bar{\alpha}_j)$ the left-hand sides. The equation in γ

$$\left| -\frac{1}{2i}\delta_{\mu\nu}(\alpha_j, \bar{\alpha}_j) - \epsilon_{\mu\nu}\cdot\gamma \right| = 0 \qquad (\epsilon_{\mu\nu} = \delta_{\mu\nu} = 0,\ \mu \neq \nu;\ \epsilon_{\mu\mu} = 1),$$

has r_j positive and r_j' negative roots, this for $j = 1, 2, \cdots, q$, all equal to unity in absolute value. Let us take finally polynomials $\gamma_{\mu\nu}(\alpha_j, \bar{\alpha}_j)$ with rational coefficients differing as little as we please from those of the (δ)'s. The Hermitian form

$$-\frac{1}{2i}\sum \gamma_{\mu\nu}(\alpha_j, \bar{\alpha}_j) x_\mu \bar{x}_\nu$$

will obviously answer the question. The existence of our matrices is therefore proved and at the same time we have given a construction for them.

To obtain h, τ being assumed as general as possible, we remark that the number of independent relations

$$\sum_{m,n}^{1\cdots q} b_{mn}\,\alpha_j^{m-1}\bar{\alpha}_j^{n-1} = 0 \qquad (j = 1, 2, \cdots, q)$$

is equal to the number of independent solutions for the (b)'s, that is, to $q(q-1)$. Hence $t' = q$. Similarly for k we must consider the number of relations

$$\sum_{m,n}^{1\cdots q} b_{mn}(\alpha_j^{m-1}\bar{\alpha}_j^{n-1} + \bar{\alpha}_j^{m-1}\alpha_j^{n-1}) = 0 \qquad (j = 1, 2, \cdots, \tfrac{1}{2}q).$$

This number is $\frac{1}{2}q^2$, hence

$$t = \frac{q(q+1)}{2} - \tfrac{1}{2}q^2 = \tfrac{1}{2}q.$$

It follows that

$$1 + h = 2(1 + k) = q + 2r^2\left[\binom{q}{2} - s\right].$$

This assumes $r > 2$. When $r = 2$ and the numbers r_j are not all equal to unity, nothing is changed. If they are all equal to unity we must add q alternate forms to h and k (the same forms as occur in the case of real multi-

pliers), and since $s = \binom{q}{2}$, we have

$$1 + h = 2q, \qquad 1 + k = \tfrac{3}{2}q.$$

Remark: When $f(\alpha) = 0$ is Abelian, it becomes possible to determine s. For it is certainly possible to derive from the set $(\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \cdots, \alpha_p)$ all the pairs of roots by the operations of G if the number of distinct multipliers exceeds $\frac{1}{2}q$ (No. 91). Hence when this occurs, as it does in the most general case, we have $s = \binom{q}{2}$, and therefore $1 + h = 2(1 + k) = q$, with the added condition that if $r = 2$ the multipliers must not all be distinct. When they are we are thrown back on the formulas already derived for this special case.

Assume now that there are exactly $\frac{1}{2}q$ distinct multipliers. Then (No. 84) Ω is impure of type (II) composed r times with

$$\omega \equiv \| 1, \alpha_j, \cdots, \alpha_j^{q-1} \| \qquad (j = 1, 2, \cdots, \tfrac{1}{2}q)$$

which is itself pure or impure according as the subgroup G' of G which maintains invariant the set $(\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \cdots, \alpha_p)$ does or does not reduce to the identity. Let n be the order of G'. The invariants of ω are given by $1 + h' = 2(1 + k') = nq$ and those of Ω by $1 + h = 2(1 + k) = nr^2 q = nrp$.

109. The form in the left-hand side of (20) can be reduced to one of the same nature with $\gamma_{\mu\nu}(\alpha_j, \overline{\alpha}_j) = 0 \quad (\mu \neq \nu)$, by a transformation of variables

$$x'_\mu = \sum_\nu b_{\mu\nu}(\alpha_j, \overline{\alpha}_j) x_\nu, \qquad y'_\mu = \sum_\nu b_{\mu\nu}(\overline{\alpha}_j, \alpha_j) y_\nu,$$

where the (b)'s are as before polynomials with rational coefficients. Now according to what has been stated in No. 89, these equations can be put in the simple form

$$x'_\mu = \sum_\nu e_{\mu\nu}(\alpha_j) x_\nu, \qquad y'_\mu = \sum_\nu e_{\mu\nu}(\overline{\alpha}_j) y_\nu,$$

where the (e)'s are still polynomials with rational coefficients. This is all equivalent to stating that Ω can be transformed into an isomorphic matrix for which (20) is replaced by $\sum_{\mu=1} \gamma_{\mu\mu}(\alpha_j, \overline{\alpha}_j) x_\mu y_\mu$. Moreover

$$\gamma_{\mu\mu}(\alpha_j, \overline{\alpha}_j) = (\alpha_j - \overline{\alpha}_j) \sum c_{\mu\mu}^{mn} (\alpha_j^m \overline{\alpha}_j^n + \overline{\alpha}_j^m \alpha_j^n)$$

and contains therefore $\frac{1}{2}q$ arbitrary coefficients. Hence Ω depends upon $\frac{1}{2}rq = p$ arbitrary integers and upon $\frac{1}{2}\sum_{j=1}^{j=q} r_j r'_j$ continuous essential parameters, namely the parameters which determine the position of one of the spaces $S_{r_j-1}, S_{r'_j-1}$ for each pair of roots $(\alpha_j, \overline{\alpha}_j)$.

When there are no other alternate forms than those derived from (19), Ω is pure since the Hermitian form belonging to each alternate form is the sum of q forms of genera r_j, with independent variables, hence its genus is $\sum r_j = p$. This is still true if there are $1 + k_0$ forms of the type in question,

such that the corresponding forms (20)

$$\sum \gamma^{s}_{\mu\nu}(\alpha_j, \bar{\alpha}_j) x_\mu y_\nu \qquad (s = 1, 2, \cdots, 1 + k_0)$$

are linearly independent and moreover do not possess any combination with coefficients polynomials in α_j, $\bar{\alpha}_j$, degenerate. In all cases if $r > 2$, or $r = 2$, and the multipliers are not all distinct, $1 + k = \frac{1}{2}q(1 + k_0)$, and in the same conditions if there are h_0 non-alternate forms of the same type,

$$1 + h = q(1 + h_0).$$

When the multipliers are all distinct $1 + k$ is the same, but $1 + h = q(2 + h_0)$.

Let us consider a little more closely the case just mentioned where Ω possesses two bilinear forms of type (19) with forms (20) independent. Let A_j, B_j be the reciprocities determined by two of them between the spaces S_{r_j-1}, $S_{r'_j-1}$. Then $A_j^{-1}\cdot B_j$ is a projectivity transforming S_{r_j} into itself. It is defined by equations such as $x'_\mu = \sum_\nu b_{\mu\nu}(\alpha_j, \bar{\alpha}_j)x_\nu$, which as before can be put in the form $x'_\mu = \sum_\nu e_{\mu\nu}(\alpha_j)x_\nu$, and it is readily seen that these relations define, as in the case of real roots, a complex multiplication permutable with the multiplication whose multipliers are the (α)'s.

Remark: Let us assume that the integers r_j are all equal and that moreover Ω possesses an alternate form (19) such that $\gamma_{\mu\nu}(\alpha_j, \alpha_k) = 0$ if $\alpha_j \neq \alpha_k$. It will then be possible to apply with scarcely any change everything that has been said in the case of real multipliers. However h and k will not be the same. Let there be k_1 forms of the nature in question and such that the alternate forms

$$\sum \gamma^{s}_{\mu\nu}(\alpha_j, \alpha_j) x_\mu y_\nu \qquad (s = 1, 2, \cdots, k_1),$$
$$\gamma^{s}_{\mu\nu}(\alpha_j, \alpha_j) = -\gamma^{s}_{\nu\mu}(\alpha_j, \alpha_j)$$

are linearly independent. We will then have

$$1 + h = \tfrac{1}{2}(1 + k_0 + 2k_1) + r^2\left[\binom{q}{2} - s\right].$$

Similarly if there are h_1 non-alternate forms, then

$$1 + h = q(1 + h_0 + h_1) + 2r^2\left[\binom{q}{2} - s\right].$$

110. Can Ω possess a new bilinear form

$$\sum \delta_{\mu\nu}(\alpha_j, \alpha_k) x_\mu y_\nu \tag{22}$$

without possessing other alternate forms than those derived from (19)? In order that this be the case, it is necessary that the following relations be verified:

$$\delta_{\mu\nu}(\alpha_j, \alpha_k) - \delta_{\nu\mu}(\alpha_k, \alpha_j) = 0,$$
$$(\alpha_j - \alpha_k)[\delta_{\mu\nu}(\alpha_j, \alpha_k) + \delta_{\nu\mu}(\alpha_k, \alpha_j)] = 0 \qquad \text{if} \qquad \alpha_j \neq \bar{\alpha}_k,$$
$$\delta_{\mu\nu}(\alpha_j, \bar{\alpha}_j) - \delta_{\nu\mu}(\bar{\alpha}_j, \alpha_j) = \phi(\alpha_j, \bar{\alpha}_j)\cdot\gamma_{\mu\nu}(\alpha_j, \bar{\alpha}_j),$$
$$(\alpha_j - \bar{\alpha}_j)[\delta_{\mu\nu}(\alpha_j, \bar{\alpha}_j) + \delta_{\nu\mu}(\bar{\alpha}_j, \alpha_j)] = \psi(\alpha_j, \bar{\alpha}_j)\cdot\gamma_{\mu\nu}(\alpha_j, \bar{\alpha}_j).$$

From the first two we conclude that

$$\delta_{\mu\nu}(\alpha_j, \alpha_k) = 0 \quad \text{if} \quad \alpha_j \neq \alpha_k \text{ or } \bar{\alpha}_k,$$
$$\delta_{\mu\nu}(\alpha_j, \alpha_j) = \delta_{\nu\mu}(\alpha_j, \alpha_j),$$

and from the last two that

$$\delta_{\mu\nu}(\alpha_j, \bar{\alpha}_j) = \chi(\alpha_j, \bar{\alpha}_j)\cdot\gamma_{\mu\nu}(\alpha_j, \bar{\alpha}_j).$$

This shows that we may combine the two forms (19) and (22) so as to obtain a form

$$\sum \zeta_{\mu\nu}(\alpha_j, \alpha_k) x_\mu y_\nu$$

such that $\zeta_{\mu\nu}(\alpha_j, \alpha_k) = 0$ if $\alpha_j \neq \alpha_k$, while

$$\sum \zeta_{\mu\nu}(\alpha_j, \alpha_j) x_\mu y_\nu = 0$$

represents a quadric of S_{r-1} which must contain the space S_{r_j-1}. If this quadric were degenerate Ω would possess a degenerate bilinear form and would therefore be impure. Limiting ourselves to the case of pure matrices, we must then have $r_j - 1 \leqq \frac{1}{2}(r-2)$ when r is even and $r_j - 1 \geqq \frac{1}{2}(r-3)$ when it is odd (Bertini). Similar limits hold of course for $r'_j - 1$. But $r_j + r'_j = r$, hence r must be even and we must have besides $r_j = r'_j = \frac{1}{2}r$. Thus r must be even, and among the multipliers each root must be taken the same number of times. In this case the solution exists actually as can be shown by the following choice of bilinear forms: For (19) we take a form such that $\gamma_{\mu\nu}(\alpha_j, \alpha_k) = 0$ if $\alpha_j \neq \alpha_k$ and

$$-\frac{1}{2i}\sum \gamma_{\mu\nu}(\alpha_j, \bar{\alpha}_j) x_\mu y_\nu = \sum_{\mu=1}^{r/2} (x_\mu y_\mu - x_{\frac{r}{2}+\mu} y_{\frac{r}{2}+\mu});$$

for the quadric (22) we take

$$\sum_{\mu=1}^{r/2} x_\mu x_{\frac{r}{2}+\mu} = 0;$$

and for the spaces S_{r_j-1}, S'_{r_j-1},

$$S_{r_j-1}\colon x_{\frac{r}{2}+\mu} = 0, \qquad S'_{r_j-1}\colon x_\mu = 0$$

$$(\mu = 1, 2, \cdots, r/2), \qquad (j = 1, 2, \cdots, q/2), \qquad \alpha_h \neq \alpha_k \text{ if } h, k \leqq q/2.$$

If there are two non-degenerate reciprocities such as (22), the product of one by the inverse of the other defines a new multiplication permutable with the first. Ω possesses then a complex multiplication of degree $q' \geqq 2q$, and we have $1 + k > \frac{1}{4}(2q) = \frac{1}{2}q$, hence there must be a new alternate form. In other words, the existence of two such reciprocities increases necessarily the index of singularity, k. When there is only one we have

$$1 + k = \tfrac{1}{2}q; \qquad 1 + h = 2q.$$

111. As an application we shall establish the existence of non-singular Abelian varieties with complex multiplication whose existence has recently been announced without proof by Scorza.*

According to No. 101 we must have $q = 2$ and the characteristic equation of the complex multiplication in question must be of the type

$$(a\alpha^2 + b\alpha + c)^q = 0, \qquad b^2 < 4ac,$$

with $p > 2$. We then have $1 + h = 2$, $1 + k = 1$ and it is sufficient to construct the matrices such as those of Nos. 107, 108 corresponding to this complex multiplication. We may observe that among the multipliers one of the roots may be taken any number of times $< p$. When p is even there exist varieties with two complex multiplications such as those of No. 111, and for them $1 + h = 4$, $1 + k = 1$. According to what we have just seen, if there is one more reciprocity of this type we have certainly $k > 0$. The matrices in question are therefore the only non-singular matrices with complex multiplication.

This result may be extended to varieties with a complex multiplication whose multipliers are real and to multiplications permutable with these. The integers h_0, k_0 having always the same meaning as previously we find that for $k_1 = 0$, h_1 can only take the values $0, 1, 3$. Finally it is easy to construct the corresponding matrices—by merely replacing everywhere the ordinary domain of rationality by the domain $K(\alpha_j)$—but we shall not dwell on this any further.

This ends the discussion of complex multiplications. We shall proceed to make a rapid application to the classification of pure matrices for $p = 2$ or 3.

§6. Pure matrices of genus two or three

112. *Matrices of genus two.* If a matrix of genus two is singular and pure, it must possess a Riemann projectivity whose characteristic equation is of type $[f(\alpha)]^r = 0$, ($f(\alpha)$ irreducible). Since $rq = 4$, r can only have the values $1, 2$. Let first $r = 1$. We have seen in No. 89 that Ω is then reducible to the type

$$\begin{Vmatrix} 1, & \alpha_1, & \alpha_1^2, & \alpha_1^3 \\ 1, & \alpha_2, & \alpha_2^2, & \alpha_2^3 \end{Vmatrix},$$

where α_1, α_2 are roots of an equation of degree four

$$(\alpha^2 - 2\zeta_1\alpha + m\zeta_1 + n)(\alpha^2 - 2\zeta_2\alpha + m\zeta_2 + n) = 0$$

with m, n rational and ζ_1, ζ_2 roots of an equation

$$a\zeta^2 + b\zeta + c = 0,$$

*Comptes Rendus, October, 1917. (Added in 1922: The proof has since been supplied in his memoir of the Palermo Rendiconti, vol. 45 (1921), p. 185. It appears to be decidedly different from ours.)

and we have indicated there the conditions that a, b, c, m, n must satisfy. As to the invariants of Ω, they are $1 + h = 2(1 + k) = 4$.

113. Let now $r = 2$ and assume the multipliers real. The matrix Ω is isomorphic to a matrix composed with two arrays

$$\left\| \begin{matrix} 1, & \tau_1 \\ 1, & \tau_2 \end{matrix} \right\|, \qquad \left\| \begin{matrix} 1, & \sqrt{d} \\ 1, & -\sqrt{d} \end{matrix} \right\|,$$

where d is a positive integer not a perfect square. We know that Ω exists provided τ_1, τ_2 are imaginary. Just by way of illustration we give the calculation, which is here very simple. There will be an alternate form

$$\gamma_{12}(\sqrt{d}, -\sqrt{d})x_1 y_2 + \gamma_{21}(\sqrt{d}, -\sqrt{d})x_2 y_1$$

with

$$\gamma_{12}(x, y) = -\gamma_{21}(y, x) = \lambda(xy + d) + \mu(x + y),$$

so chosen as not to impose any condition on τ_1 and τ_2. This form contains two arbitrary parameters, hence $1 + k = 2$, and similarly $1 + h = 2$ as we already knew. The corresponding Hermitian form is, up to the factor $\sqrt{d}$,

$$\tau''(\mu + \lambda\sqrt{d})x_1 \bar{x}_1 - \tau_1''(\mu - \lambda\sqrt{d})x_2 \bar{x}_2; \qquad \tau_j = \tau_j' + i\tau_j''..$$

We must therefore have

$$\tau_1''(\mu + \lambda\sqrt{d}) > 0, \qquad \tau_2''(\mu - \lambda\sqrt{d}) < 0.$$

We can always assume that one of the numbers τ_1'', τ_2'' is positive—say τ_1''. The existence of Ω is certain for we can take λ, μ positive and such that $\mu - \lambda\sqrt{d}$ has the sign of $-\tau_2''$. Moreover the matrix is pure because the Hermitian form is of genus two provided that λ and μ are not both zero. The sets of integers (λ, μ) satisfying the above equalities define the principal forms and therefore also the systems of Abelian functions corresponding to the matrix.

If there exists a non-alternate bilinear form imposing some relations upon τ_1, τ_2, these numbers are conjugate quadratic numbers of the domain $K(\sqrt{d})$, and Ω possesses a Riemann projectivity with irreducible characteristic equation. It is therefore of the type considered in No. 112.

114. Let us pass to the case of complex multipliers. We have now two arrays

$$\left\| \begin{matrix} 1, & \tau_1 \\ 1, & \tau_2 \end{matrix} \right\|, \qquad \left\| \begin{matrix} 1, & i\sqrt{d} \\ 1, & -i\sqrt{d} \end{matrix} \right\|,$$

where d is as before a positive integer not a perfect square. From the existence of an alternate form, follows a bilinear relation between τ_1 and τ_2, whose coefficients belong to the dómain $K(i\sqrt{d})$. If Ω is pure we can always reduce it to an isomorphic matrix composed with two similar arrays such that

the relation in question is then $c_{11} - c_{22}\tau_1\tau_2 = 0$, where c_{11}, c_{22} are integers. The corresponding Hermitian form is

$$c_{11}x_1\bar{x}_1 - c_{22}x_2\bar{x}_2 .$$

It must be positive for $x_1 = 1$, $x_2 = \tau_1$, and negative for $x_1 = 1$, $x_2 = \tau_2$. It follows that c_{11}, c_{22} must have the same signs and that their ratio must be included between $\tau_1\bar{\tau}_1$ and $\tau_2\bar{\tau}_2$, numbers which must not be equal. This is equivalent to the sole condition $|\tau_1| \neq |\tau_2|$. The invariants of Ω are $1 + h = 4$, $1 + k = 3$. As they have the maximum value for a pure matrix, Ω cannot acquire any other bilinear forms. This completes the discussion of the case $p = 2$.

We see that for a pure matrix of genus 2, the only possible combinations (h, k) are $(0, 0)$, $(1, 1)$, $(3, 2)$, and $(3, 1)$. The corresponding matrices depend respectively upon $3, 2, 1, 0$ continuous parameters.

115. *Matrices of genus three.* When $p = 3$, $qr = 6$; hence $r = 1$, 2, or 3. Let first $r = 1$, and therefore $q = 3$. The characteristic equation is

$$\prod_{j=1}^{3}(\alpha^2 - 2\zeta_j\alpha + \lambda\zeta_j^2 + \mu\zeta_j + \nu) = 0,$$

where the (ζ)'s are roots of an irreducible equation $\zeta^3 + p\zeta^2 + q\zeta + r = 0$. Let T be an operation of the group G of the characteristic equation, permuting cyclically the pairs $(\alpha_1, \bar{\alpha}_1)$, $(\alpha_2, \bar{\alpha}_2)$, $(\alpha_3, \bar{\alpha}_3)$. It corresponds to the cyclic operation of order 3 that the group of the equation in ζ always contains. If we observe that T is permutable with the binary operation S of G permuting pairs of conjugate roots, we see that with a suitable choice of notation T has one of the following two forms:

$$(\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \alpha_3)\cdot(\bar{\alpha}_1, \bar{\alpha}_2, \bar{\alpha}_3); \qquad (\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \alpha_3, \bar{\alpha}_1, \bar{\alpha}_2, \bar{\alpha}_3).$$

Hence G always contains a cyclic subgroup of order 6, of the powers of TS in the first case and of the powers of T in the second. This is sufficient to allow us to affirm, as in the case of an Abelian equation, that there exists a pure matrix corresponding to the above equation since it will always be possible to choose three roots α_1, α_2, α_3 of which none are conjugate to each other and such that from the pairs (α_1, α_2), (α_2, α_3), (α_3, α_1) we may deduce, by the operations of the group, every pair of non-conjugate roots. As to the invariants, they will have the values $1 + h = 2(1 + k) = 6$.

116. Let us assume now $r = 2$. The matrix Ω is then composed with the arrays

$$\|\tau_{j1}, \tau_{j2}\|, \qquad \|1, \alpha_j, \alpha_j^2\| \qquad (j = 1, 2, 3),$$

the multipliers being the roots of an equation of the third degree. I say that in order that Ω be pure, these roots must all be real. For if $\sum\gamma_{\mu\nu}(\alpha_j, \alpha_k)x_\mu y_\nu$

is a principal form, the corresponding Hermitian form will be definite only if its coefficients A_{jj} are not all zero, which requires that the quantities $\gamma_{\mu\nu}(\alpha_j, \bar{\alpha}_j)$ $(\mu, \nu = 1, 2, 3, 4)$ be not all zero. Hence, if there is a pair of imaginary multipliers, the expressions $\gamma_{\mu\nu}(\alpha_j, \alpha_k)$ $(\alpha_j \neq \alpha_k)$, $(\mu, \nu = 1, 2, 3, 4)$ are not all zero. Moreover as is well known the equation in the multipliers is not Abelian. But the group of a non-Abelian irreducible equation of degree three is of order six and permutes transitively the three pairs of roots. Hence, if $\gamma_{\mu\nu}(x, y)$ does not vanish for one pair of distinct roots, it does not vanish for any other pair. Now, there are three distinct quantities of type $(\alpha_j^m \alpha_h^n + \alpha_j^n \alpha_h^m)$ $(m, n = 0, 1, 2)$ between which there is no relation with integral coefficients. Hence (No. 96) $1 + k = 3 + 3 = 6 > 2p - 1$ and Ω if it exists at all is necessarily impure.

When Ω is pure the three multipliers must then be real. We know then that Ω always exists provided that the ratios τ_{j2}/τ_{j1} are not real. When they are arbitrary, we have $1 + h = 1 + k = 3$. The existence of a new alternate form either will bring us back to the case of No. 115 or else will make $1 + k$ take the value $6 > 2p - 1$, hence Ω will be impure. The same will hold for the non-alternate forms.

117. Let finally $r = 3$, $q = 2$. Since r is odd, the multipliers must be imaginary. The matrix Ω is isomorphic to a matrix composed with two arrays,

$$\tau \equiv \| \tau_{j1}, \tau_{j2}, \tau_{j3} \|, \qquad \| 1, \alpha_j \| \qquad (\alpha_1 = \alpha_2 = -\alpha_3 = i\sqrt{d}),$$

where d is again a positive integer and not a perfect square. The determinants of order two, derived from the first two rows of τ, cannot all be zero, for otherwise Ω would have two rows with proportional terms. Finally if $\tau_{31} = \tau_{32} = 0$, Ω contains an elliptic submatrix. Hence if Ω is pure, we can always replace τ by an array of the type

$$\begin{Vmatrix} 1, & 0, & \tau_1 \\ 0, & 1, & \tau_2 \\ 1, & \tau_4, & \tau_3 \end{Vmatrix}.$$

Since we have made no transformation upon the columns, we may take as form (19)

$$\gamma_{11}(\alpha_j, \bar{\alpha}_j) x_1 y_1 + \gamma_{22}(\alpha_j, \bar{\alpha}_j) x_2 y_2 + \gamma_{33}(\alpha_j, \bar{\alpha}_j) x_3 y_3.$$

The numbers $\frac{-1}{2i}\gamma_{jj}(i\sqrt{d}, -i\sqrt{d}) = a_j$ are real numbers of the domain $K(i\sqrt{d})$—they are therefore rational numbers and we can without inconvenience assume that they are integers. In order that Ω be a Riemann matrix it is necessary (a) that $a_1 x_1 y_1 + a_2 x_2 y_2 + a_3 x_3 y_3$ vanish when the (x)'s are replaced by the elements of the first or second rows and the (y)'s by those of the third; (b) that $a_1 x_1 \bar{x}_1 + a_2 x_2 \bar{x}_2 + a_3 x_3 \bar{x}_3$ be positive at the point $(\lambda, \mu, \lambda\tau_1 + \mu\tau_2)$ whatever λ, μ, and negative at the point $(1, \tau_4, \tau_3)$.

We have, therefore, the relations

$$a_1 + a_3 \tau_1 \tau_3 = 0, \qquad a_2 \tau_4 + a_3 \tau_2 \tau_3 = 0,$$

then the inequalities

$$a_1 + a_2 \tau_4 \bar{\tau}_4 + a_3 \tau_3 \bar{\tau}_3 < 0$$

$$(a_1 + a_3 \tau_1 \bar{\tau}_1)\lambda\bar{\lambda} + a_3 \tau_1 \bar{\tau}_2 \lambda\bar{\mu} + a_3 \bar{\tau}_1 \tau_2 \bar{\lambda}\mu + (a_2 + a_3 \tau_2 \bar{\tau}_2)\mu\bar{\mu} > 0.$$

Hence the roots of the equation in ξ

$$\begin{vmatrix} a_1 + a_3 \tau_1 \bar{\tau}_1 - \xi, & a_3 \tau_1 \bar{\tau}_2 \\ a_3 \bar{\tau}_1 \tau_2, & a_2 + a_3 \tau_2 \bar{\tau}_2 - \xi \end{vmatrix} = 0$$

must both be positive. Moreover the coefficient of $\lambda\bar{\lambda}$ in the Hermitian form in λ, μ must be positive, which gives us finally the inequalities

$$a_1 + a_3 \tau_1 \bar{\tau}_1 > 0,$$
$$a_1 + a_2 + a_3(\tau_1 \bar{\tau}_1 + \tau_2 \bar{\tau}_2) > 0,$$
$$a_1 a_2 + a_3(a_2 \tau_1 \bar{\tau}_1 + a_1 \tau_2 \bar{\tau}_2) > 0.$$

Let us set

$$a_1 = -ma_3, \qquad a_2 = -na_3, \qquad \tau_j = R_j e^{i\phi_j}.$$

The array τ assumes then the form

$$\tau \equiv \begin{Vmatrix} 1, & 0, & m/\tau_3 \\ 0, & 1, & n\tau_4/\tau_3 \\ 1, & \tau_4, & \tau_3 \end{Vmatrix},$$

and our inequalities reduce to

$$ma_3(m - R_3^2) > 0,$$
$$a_3(m^2 + n^2 R_4^2 - (m+n)R_3^2) > 0,$$
$$a_3(m + nR_4^2 - R_3^2) > 0, \qquad mn < 0.$$

Let us consider m, n as rectangular point coördinates and draw the curves representing the functions in the left-hand sides of these inequalities (ellipse with axes parallel to the coördinate axes and straight lines):
The point (m, n) can only be in one of the two regions, I, II, III. If it is in one of the first two regions, we must take $a_3 > 0$, and if it is in the third, we must take $a_3 < 0$. One of these regions always exists, hence τ_3, τ_4 can take arbitrary values, zero excepted. Under these conditions, we shall have $1 + k = 1$, $h = 2$, and the matrix is not singular—it is the simplest matrix of this type of genus $p > 1$.

If the matrix possesses a new non-degenerate bilinear form

$$\sum \gamma_{\mu\nu}(\alpha_j, \alpha_k) x_\mu y_\nu$$

it is impossible that $\gamma_{\mu\nu} = 0$ for $\alpha_j \neq \alpha_k$ if Ω is pure. Indeed then, if $\alpha_j = \alpha_k$, either the equation obtained, $\sum \gamma_{\mu\nu}(i\sqrt{d},\ i\sqrt{d}) x_\mu y_\nu = 0 \quad (\alpha_k = \alpha_j)$,

represents a linear complex, necessarily degenerate since the containing space is of odd dimensionality, or else

$$\sum [\gamma_{\mu\nu}(i\sqrt{d}, i\sqrt{d}) + \gamma_{\nu\mu}(i\sqrt{d}, i\sqrt{d})]\, x_\mu x_\nu = 0 \qquad (\alpha_j = \alpha_k)$$

is a conic containing all the points of the line that joins $(1, 0, n/\tau_3)$ to $(0, 1, n\tau_4/\tau_3)$, conic necessarily degenerate. In all cases the reciprocity $\sum \gamma_{\mu\nu}(\alpha_j, \alpha_j) x_\mu y_\nu$ is degenerate and Ω is impure.

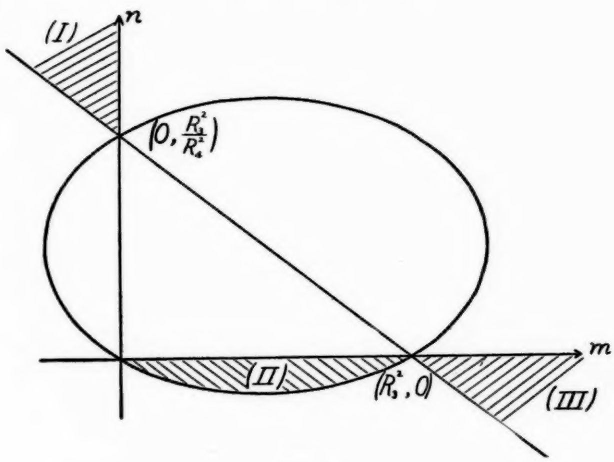


FIG. 1.

If the expressions $\gamma_{\mu\nu}(\alpha_j, \alpha_k)$ are not all zero, Ω will possess two reciprocities of the type

$$\sum \gamma_{\mu\nu}(\alpha_j, \alpha_k) x_\mu y_\nu = 0,$$
$$\gamma_{\mu\nu}(\alpha_j, \alpha_j) = 0; \qquad \gamma_{\mu\nu}(\alpha_j, \alpha_k) \neq 0 \text{ if } \alpha_j \neq \alpha_k.$$

If Ω is pure they are not degenerate and multiplying one of them by the inverse of the other we obtain then a new multiplication permutable with the one whose multipliers are the (α)'s. In that case Ω must possess a Riemann projectivity of degree $\geqq 2q$, hence of degree 6, and we fall back on the type of No. 115.

Thus for a pure matrix of genus three the only possible combinations for the invariants h, k are $(0, 0)$, $(0, 1)$, $(1, 1)$, $(2, 5)$. The corresponding matrices depend upon $6, 2, 3, 0$ essential parameters.

Chapter III. Abelian varieties with cyclic groups and varieties of rank > 1 images of their involutions

§ 1. Varieties of rank one with cyclic group

118. The study of hyperelliptic surfaces with cyclic group and more generally with finite group of birational transformations has already been made by Enriques, Severi, Bagnera and de Franchis. We only propose here to give a few new properties and to calculate the invariants of some simple varieties of genus $p > 2$ and rank > 1.

Every birational transformation of finite order T of an Abelian variety of rank one, V_p, whose Riemann matrix has been put in a suitable form, will be given by equations such as

$$(1)\qquad \begin{aligned} u'_i &= u_i + \alpha_i & (i = 1, 2, \cdots, p');\\ u_{p'+j} &= \epsilon_j\, u_{p'+j} + \alpha_{p'+j} & (j = 1, 2, \cdots, p - p'),\end{aligned}$$

where the (ϵ)'s are roots of unity other than one. A very interesting case and one to which we shall largely limit the discussion is that where the equations of T are

$$(2)\qquad u'_j = \epsilon^{n_j}\, u_j \qquad (j = 1, 2, \cdots, p),$$

the (ϵ^n)'s being primitive roots of a binomial equation $x^m = 1$. It will be particularly the case if Ω is pure. We shall assume $m > 2$. The numbers $\pm\, n_j$ will form a complete set of residues prime to m taken r times so that if $2\mu = \varphi(m)$, where φ is the Euler function, then $r = p/\mu$.

We have shown how we may derive from Ω a matrix Ω' composed with two arrays

$$\tau \equiv \| \tau_{j1}, \tau_{j2}, \cdots, \tau_{jr} \|, \qquad \| 1, \epsilon^{n_j}, \cdots, \epsilon^{(2\mu-1)n_j} \| \qquad (j = 1, 2, \cdots, p).$$

To this matrix corresponds an Abelian variety of rank one, V'_p, in correspondence $(n, 1)$ with V_p if the array τ is suitably chosen. V'_p is the image of an ordinary involution of order n on V_p and possesses a cyclic birational transformation expressed by the same equations (2). Now it is easy to show that from the point of view which will occupy us, we may replace V_p by V'_p, that is, Ω by Ω', and this we propose to do in the sequence. We shall then assume that Ω coincides with Ω'.

When τ is as general as possible and the (ϵ^n)'s are not all different, the invariants of V_p are given by $1 + h = 2(1 + k) = 2\mu$, while if these multipliers are different $(r = 2)$, they are given by $1 + h = 4\mu$, $1 + k = 3\mu$.

119. The determination of the total group of birational transformations of a V_p is of considerable interest. For $p = 2$, this has already been done by Scorza in his *Palermo Rendiconti* memoir. We shall show how the solution of this question is related in an important case to the problem of the determination of the units of an algebraic domain.

Let G be a permutable subgroup of the group formed by the products of the complex multiplications, such that no Riemann projectivity corresponding to one of its operations transforms separately a submatrix of Ω if Ω is impure. We shall endeavor to characterize the operations of G which lead to birational transformations of V_p.

Let T be a birational transformation belonging to G and

$$B \equiv \| b_{\nu\mu} \| \qquad (\nu, \mu = 1, 2, \cdots, 2p)$$

its Riemann projectivity. We know that the determinant $|b_{\nu\mu}| = \pm 1$. Moreover there exists a minimum base $B_1, B_2, \cdots, B_q$ for the projectivities whose terms are integers and we have $B = \sum \lambda_j B_j$, where the (λ)'s are integers. If $\alpha_1^j, \alpha_2^j, \cdots, \alpha_p^j$ are the multipliers of B_j we have for those of B

$$\alpha_s = \sum_j \lambda_j \alpha_s^j \qquad (s = 1, 2, \cdots, p)$$

and their norm is equal to unity. They are therefore conjugate units of a certain algebraic domain, and more especially α_s is a unit contained in the modulus $(\alpha_1^s, \alpha_2^s, \cdots, \alpha_q^s)$. We may remark in passing that each number of this modulus determines a Riemann projectivity whose terms are integers. Moreover the modulus is an *order* in the sense of Dedekind. For, if α_s' and α_s'' belong to it, there correspond to them projectivities with integral terms B', B'', and $\alpha_s' \alpha_s''$ which is multiplier of the projectivity with integral terms $B'B''$ belongs actually to the same modulus. Thus α_s is a unit contained in a certain order of algebraic numbers and conversely if α_s is such a unit, it defines a projectivity with integral terms whose determinant is unity, hence a birational transformation of V_p. Thus the projectivities corresponding to the birational transformations, *and therefore the birational transformations themselves, are combined like units in an order of an algebraic domain.* From a classical theorem due to Dirichlet, follows then that there exists a finite number of permutable birational transformations $T_1, T_2, \cdots, T_\nu$, $\nu < p/r$, such that any other is given by a relation

$$T = T_0 T_1^{n_1} T_2^{n_2} \cdots T_\nu^{n_\nu},$$

where T_0 is an arbitrary cyclic transformation of the system and ν is the number of distinct real multipliers increased by half the number of imaginary multipliers.

Let $\beta_1^j, \beta_2^j, \cdots, \beta_s^j$ be a minimum base for the integers of the domain $K(\alpha_j)$. The solution of the problem which we are considering is related to that of the following: To solve in integers x_j the equation

$$\prod_j \sum_k \beta_k^j x_k = \pm 1.$$

We see that the group of birational transformations of G, like G itself, depends

solely upon the equation $f(\alpha) = 0$ but not upon the array τ provided that $r \neq 2$.

In the particularly interesting case where the roots of $f(\alpha) = 0$ are all imaginary, each being given by the same rational function of its conjugate, the problem is somewhat simplified. Let us set $\alpha_j + \bar{\alpha}_j = 2\zeta_j$, $\alpha_j \bar{\alpha}_j = \eta_j$, and assume the multipliers so chosen that the (ζ)'s are all distinct. The norm of η_j is obviously *one* and the problem is therefore reduced to finding the real units of the real domain $K(\zeta_j)$ defined by an irreducible equation of degree p/r, $\phi(\zeta) = 0$, (No. 89).

Remarks: (I) There exist no cyclic birational transformations permutable with a given transformation T of order q^m, (q prime), other than the powers of T itself. This follows from the fact that if $\epsilon = e^{2\pi i/q^m}$, the algebraic domain $K(\epsilon)$ contains no other roots of unity than the powers of ϵ.

(II) With T still of order q^m, (q prime), and if $r > 1$, we may apply certain considerations of No. 90. If the numbers ϵ^{n_j} are invariant under a subgroup of order n of the equation in the q^m-th primitive roots of unity, the period matrix is composed with n submatrices of genus $p' = p/n$. If there exists a complex multiplication with multipliers of degree $> n$, the corresponding irreducible equation must be reducible in the domain $K(\epsilon)$. But according to a well-known theorem on the cyclic units of a cyclic domain of degree q^m, if these multipliers are roots of unity they must be themselves powers of q. It follows that if the order ν of a birational transformation is such that $\varphi(\nu) > n$, then $\nu = q^a \leqq q^m$. In particular, if $m = 1$, then $\nu = q$.

120. As an application, we shall establish, in a different manner, the results obtained by Scorza on the birational transformations of pure hyperelliptic surfaces when the multipliers are roots of an irreducible equation of degree four. Let $u_1' = \alpha_1 u_1$, $u_2' = \alpha_2 u_2$ be the equations of the birational transformation. The expressions $\alpha_1 + \bar{\alpha}_1$ and $\alpha_1 \bar{\alpha}_1$ are integers of a quadratic domain $K(\sqrt{d})$ where d is a positive integer, not a perfect square, and $\alpha_1 \bar{\alpha}_1$ is a unit of this domain. Hence α_1 satisfies an equation

$$\alpha^2 + (m + n\sqrt{d})\alpha + t + u\sqrt{d} = 0,$$

where m, n, t, u are integers or halves of integers and $t^2 - du^2 = \pm 1$. The number α_2 satisfies the equation obtained when $\sqrt{d}$ is replaced by $-\sqrt{d}$.

In order that these two numbers be imaginary, it is necessary that

$$(m + n\sqrt{d})^2 < 4(t + u\sqrt{d}), \qquad (m - n\sqrt{d})^2 < 4(t - u\sqrt{d}).$$

Hence $(m^2 - dn^2)^2 < 16$, and therefore $|\text{norm}\,(m + n\sqrt{d})| = |\beta| = 1, 2,$ or 3. The surface possesses the birational transformations whose multipliers are α_1^n, α_2^n, n being an arbitrary integer. Hence, also $|\text{norm}\,(\alpha_1^n + \bar{\alpha}_1^n)| = 1,$

2, or 3. Now if we set

$$(m + n\sqrt{d})^2(t - u\sqrt{d}) = \xi + \eta\sqrt{d},$$

and observe that $\xi^2 - d\eta^2 = \beta^2$, we obtain by an easy computation

$$\text{norm}\,(\alpha_1^3 + \bar{\alpha}_1^3) = \beta(\beta^2 - 6\xi + 9) = \beta',$$
$$\text{norm}\,(\alpha_1^4 + \bar{\alpha}_1^4) = (\beta^2 - 4\xi + 4)^2 - 4(2\xi^2 - \beta^2 - 4\xi + 4) = \beta''.$$

Hence if $\beta = \pm 3$ we must also have $\beta' = \pm 3$, $18 - 6\xi = \pm 1$, which is impossible since 2ξ is an integer. Similarly, if $\beta = \pm 2$, $\beta' = \pm 2$ and $13 - 6\xi = \pm 1$, which requires that $\beta' = \beta$, $\xi = 2$. But in that case $\beta'' = 0$, which is impossible since d is not a perfect square. It follows necessarily that $\beta = \pm 1$. We conclude from this that

$$(5 - 4\xi)^2 - 4(2\xi^2 - 4\xi + 3) = \beta'',$$

or

$$\xi^2 - 3\xi + \tfrac{1}{8}(17 - \beta'') = 0,$$

whence

$$\xi = \frac{1}{2}\left[3 \pm \sqrt{9 - \frac{17 - \beta''}{2}}\right].$$

For $\beta'' = 1$, we obtain $\xi = 1$ or 2. But for $\xi = 1$, $\beta' = \pm 4$, and for $\xi = 2$, $\beta' = \pm 2$. Hence $\beta'' = -1$, $\xi = 3/2$, and therefore $d = \dfrac{\xi^2 - 1}{\eta^2} = \dfrac{5}{(2\eta)^2}$, and finally $\eta = \pm \frac{1}{2}$, $d = 5$. Ultimately, then, we obtain

$$(m + n\sqrt{5})^2 = (t + u\sqrt{5})\left(\frac{3 \pm \sqrt{5}}{2}\right),$$
$$t + u\sqrt{5} = (m + n\sqrt{5})^2\left(\frac{3 \pm \sqrt{5}}{2}\right).$$

The quantity $\delta = \frac{1}{2}(1 + \sqrt{5})$ is the fundamental unit of the domain $K(\sqrt{5})$. Hence

$$m + n\sqrt{5} = \delta^{\nu}, \qquad t + u\sqrt{d} = \delta^{2(\nu \pm 1)},$$

and therefore α satisfies one of the two equations

$$\alpha^2 + \delta^{\nu}\alpha + \delta^{2(\nu \pm 1)} = 0.$$

If we observe that for $\nu = 1$ the second has for root $\epsilon = e^{2\pi i/5}$, we find for ζ, if we set $\mu = \nu - 1$, the two values $\epsilon\delta^{\mu}$, $(\epsilon + \epsilon^{-1})^{\mu}\left(\dfrac{2\epsilon - 1 + \delta}{2}\right)$, or else, since $\delta = \epsilon + \epsilon^{-1}$, the values

$$\epsilon(\epsilon + \epsilon^{-1})^{\mu}, \qquad (\epsilon + \epsilon^{-1})^{\mu}\left(\frac{3\epsilon + \epsilon^{-1} - 1}{2}\right).$$

Having taken for α_1 one of these values we obtain α_2 by replacing everywhere

ϵ by ϵ^2 or ϵ^3. The corresponding matrices are isomorphic to

$$\left\| \begin{matrix} 1, & \alpha_1, & \alpha_1^2, & \alpha_1^3 \\ 1, & \alpha_2, & \alpha_2^2, & \alpha_2^3 \end{matrix} \right\| .$$

For $\mu = 0$ and α of the first type, we have the matrix

$$\left\| \begin{matrix} 1, & \epsilon, & \epsilon^2, & \epsilon^3 \\ 1, & \epsilon^2, & \epsilon^4, & \epsilon \end{matrix} \right\|$$

to which they are all isomorphic and it corresponds to the surface of Jacobi-Humbert investigated by Scorza or the Jacobi surface of the curve

$$y^2 = x(x^5 + 1),$$

which possesses a cyclic transformation of order 5.

Remark: We have assumed everywhere that d is not a perfect square. In the contrary case $t + u\sqrt{d} = \pm 1$, $m + n\sqrt{d} = \mu$, integer, and α_1 is a root of $\alpha^2 + \mu\alpha \pm 1 = 0$. The surface possesses then a birational transformation with multipliers of degree two.

§ 2. Multiple points of abelian varieties of rank > 1

121. Let us designate by W_p the Abelian variety of rank m, image of the cyclic involution (1) or (2). The multiple points of W_p are images of the coincidence points of the involution on V_p. If the transformation T corresponds to the equations (1) we shall obtain the coincidence points if we obtain the solutions of the following equations in the unknown integers x_μ,

$$u_i + \sum_{\mu=1}^{2p} x_\mu \omega_{i\mu} = u_i + \alpha_i \qquad (i = 1, 2, \cdots, p');$$

$$u_{p'+j} + \sum_{\mu=1}^{2p} x_\mu \omega_{p'+j,\mu} = \epsilon_j u_{p'+j} + \alpha_{p'+j} \qquad (j = 1, 2, \cdots, p - p').$$

If $p' < p$, there is no solution when the (α)'s of index $i \leqq p'$ are not all zero and there is an infinity of them when they all are. In this last case the problem is reduced to the determination of the coincidence points of an involution on a $V_{p-p'}$. Let us assume then that $p' = 0$, or that the equations of T are of the form

$$u_i' = \epsilon_i u_i + \alpha_i \qquad (i = 1, 2, \cdots, p).$$

The coincidence points are all given by the formula

$$u_i = \frac{-\alpha_i}{\epsilon_i - 1} + \sum_{\mu=1}^{2p} \frac{x_\mu \omega_{i\mu}}{\epsilon_i - 1} \qquad (i = 1, 2, \cdots, p).$$

Let $(x_1^0, x_2^0, \cdots, x_{2p}^0)$ be a solution in integers. If we add to the (x^0)'s a solution of the system

$$\sum_{\mu=1}^{2p} \frac{x_\mu \omega_{i\mu}}{\epsilon_i - 1} = \sum_{\mu=1}^{2p} y_\mu \omega_{i\mu} \qquad (i = 1, 2, \cdots, p),$$

the (y)'s being also integers, we shall always obtain the same coincidence point. Now, let

$$\epsilon_i \omega_{i\mu} = \sum_{\nu=1}^{2p} a_{\nu\mu} \omega_{i\nu} \qquad (i = 1, 2, \cdots, p;\ \mu = 1, 2, \cdots, 2p),$$

be the Riemann p ojectivity belonging to T. The above system can be written

$$\sum_{\mu=1}^{2p} x_\mu \omega_{i\mu} = -\sum_{\mu=1}^{2p} y_\mu \omega_{i\mu} + \sum_{\mu,\nu}^{1\cdots 2p} y_\mu a_{\nu\mu} \omega_{i\nu} \qquad (i = 1, 2, \cdots, p),$$

and therefore

$$x_\mu = -y_\mu + \sum_{\nu=1}^{2p} a_{\mu\nu} y_\nu \qquad (\mu = 1, 2, \cdots, 2p).$$

Let us set

$$a_{\mu\mu} - 1 = b_{\mu\mu}, \qquad a_{\mu\nu} = b_{\mu\nu} \quad \text{if} \quad \mu \neq \nu,$$

and let $B_{\mu\nu}$ be the coefficient of $b_{\mu\nu}$ in the expansion of the determinant

$$B = |b_{\mu\nu}| \qquad (\mu, \nu = 1, 2, \cdots, 2p),$$

whose value is

$$B = \prod_{i=1}^{p} (\epsilon_i - 1)(\epsilon_i^{-1} - 1) > 0.$$

The (x)'s satisfy the congruences

$$\sum_{\mu=1}^{2p} B_{\mu\nu} x_\nu \equiv 0, \text{ mod. } B \qquad (\nu = 1, 2, \cdots, 2p)$$

which possess B^{2p-1} distinct solutions in numbers included between zero and B.* Thus to each of the B^{2p} sets of values of the (x)'s all included between zero and B—and it is not necessary to consider any others—will correspond B^{2p-1} others giving the same coincidence point of the involution, hence the same multiple point of W_p. Therefore the number of these multiple points is precisely equal to B.

The value of B is easy to compute. Let $F(\alpha) = 0$ be the characteristic equation of the complex multiplication belonging to T. We have obviously $B = F(1)$. For the Kummer surface $F(\alpha) = (\alpha + 1)^4$, $B = 16$. For the hyperelliptic surface of rank 3 belonging to the matrix

$$\left\| \begin{matrix} 1, & \epsilon, & \tau, & \epsilon\tau \\ 1, & \epsilon^2, & \tau', & \epsilon^2\tau' \end{matrix} \right\|, \qquad \epsilon = e^{2\pi i/3},$$

$F(\alpha) = (1 + \alpha + \alpha^2)^2$, $F(1) = 3^2 = 9$, which is actually the number found by Bagnera, de Franchis, Enriques, and Severi.

122. When m is arbitrary, the singular points are of different nature according as the corresponding points of V_p are coincidence points for all the powers

* Krazer, *Lehrbuch der Theta Functionen*, p. 57.

of T or for some of them only. We shall examine in detail the case of $m = q$, prime. The case of m arbitrary can be treated in very much the same way. We may also take the numbers α_i all equal to zero and we then have for the equations of T $u'_i = \epsilon^{n_i} u_i$ $(i = 1, 2, \cdots, p)$, where the numbers $\pm n_i$ form $2p/(q-1)$ times a complete set of residues modulo q. The neighborhoods of the multiple points are transitively permuted by a finite group of birational transformations of W_p which corresponds to a group of ordinary transformations of V_p (Bagnera and de Franchis). Hence the neighborhood of any one of them is equivalent to the same number κ of infinitesimal hyper-surfaces and, from the point of view of Analysis Situs, they behave alike. It is therefore sufficient to consider the multiple point corresponding to the coincidence point $u_1 = u_2 = \cdots = u_p = 0$.

The groups of points of the involution in the neighborhood of this coincidence point are in one-to-one correspondence with the groups of points of the involutions determined in an S_p by the homogeneous transformation of coördinates

$$\zeta x'_i = \epsilon^{n_i} x_i, \qquad \zeta x'_{p+1} = x_{p+1} \qquad (i = 1, 2, \cdots, p)$$

in the neighborhood of the coincidence point $O\ (0, 0, \cdots, 0, 1)$. Designate by M_p the image of this involution of S_p and by s the number of distinct exponents modulo q among the (n)'s. In the neighborhood of the multiple point O' of M_p transformed of O, there will be s distinct branches corresponding to the s infinitesimal varieties of coincidence of the involution in the neighborhood of O. Let us apply a quadratic birational transformation to the space containing M_p transforming it into a variety M'_p, this in such a manner that O' becomes a hyperplane H. The s branches just mentioned become, as far as their parts in the neighborhood of O' are concerned, the neighborhoods of s linear spaces of H, of which we shall designate any one by K''. To K'' corresponds on M_p an infinitesimal variety K' very near O', and on V_p an infinitesimal variety of coincidence K very near O. The $p-1$ dimensional elements of V_p passing through K undergo an involution whose representative equations with suitably chosen homogeneous parameters x_i are of the type

$$\zeta x'_i = \epsilon^{n_i - n_h} \cdot x_i \qquad (i = 1, 2, \cdots, t')$$
$$\zeta x'_{t'+l} = x_{t'+l} \qquad (l = 1, 2, \cdots, t),$$

where n_h is one of the indices n, perfectly defined when K is known. This involution is of the same type as previously except that we have now only $s-1$ distinct groups of exponents. In the neighborhood of K'' there will then be $(s-1)$ distinct branches of M'_p. This reasoning may be continued until we isolate elements in the vicinity of which there is only one branch. We shall then have $\kappa = s!$ In particular, if the (n)'s form a complete system of residues, then $\kappa = (q-1)!$ The singular points are therefore equivalent to

$B\kappa = Bs!$ infinitesimal algebraic hypersurfaces and therefore $\rho = [\rho] + Bs!$ We recall that when any invariant is written within square brackets, its value is assumed taken disregarding infinitesimal cycles (See No. 11).

Remark: The preceding discussion, followed by a reasoning analogous to that in No. 51, may lead to a proof that W_p is birationally transformable into a non-singular variety contained in a suitable space.

§ 3. **Indices of connectivity of varieties of rank > 1**

123. Let us assume the birational transformation of type (2). The matrix Ω is then equivalent to the matrix Ω' of No. 118. Designate by δ_h^{μ} the linear cycle of V_p corresponding to the period $\epsilon^{nh}\tau_{j\mu}$, by $(\delta_{h_1}^{\mu_1}, \delta_{h_2}^{\mu_2}, \cdots, \delta_{h_s}^{\mu_s})$ the s-cycle corresponding to the linear cycles in parenthesis, and by $(\bar{\delta}_{h_1}^{\mu_1}, \bar{\delta}_{h_2}^{\mu_2}, \cdots, \bar{\delta}_{h_s}^{\mu_s})$ the corresponding cycle on W_p. On this last variety

$$(\bar{\delta}_{h_1}^{\mu_1}, \cdots, \bar{\delta}_{h_s}^{\mu_s}) \sim (-1)^n (\bar{\delta}_{k_1}^{\nu_1}, \cdots, \bar{\delta}_{k_s}^{\nu_s})$$

if the sets of integers (μ), (ν) differ only by their order and if moreover, when $\mu_d = \nu_{d'}$, then $h_d = k_{d'} + \nu$. The integer n indicates the number of inversions when we pass from one of the systems of superscripts to the other. The cycles $(\bar{\delta}_{h_1}^{\mu_1}, \bar{\delta}_{h_2}^{\mu_2}, \cdots, \bar{\delta}_{h_s}^{\mu_s})$ form therefore a base for the finite cycles on W_p. It is not in general possible to give an exact formula for $[R_s]$, but we can give a geometrical process to obtain this number. Let first $p = \mu$, $s = 2$. We mark on a circle the vertices $1, 2, \cdots, m$ of a regular m-sided polygon and denote by $r_1, r_2, \cdots, r_{2\mu}$ the numbers which are prime to m and $< m$. We join the vertices r_i to each other and the number of segments of distinct length thus obtained is equal to $[R_2]$. Similarly $[R_s]$ is the number of distinct incongruent convex polygons having for vertices s of the points r_i. If $p > \mu$, $r > 1$, we take rn division points and use the points $r_i, r_i + m, \cdots, r_i + (r-1)m$ as the vertices of convex polygons.

124. *Case of $m = q$, odd prime.* We can then obtain simple formulas for the indices. Let first $2p = q - 1$. An s-sided convex polygon will be determined by s integers whose sum is q, say $h_1, h_2, \cdots, h_s$. Two convex polygons that correspond to partitions $h_1, h_2, \cdots, h_s$, and $h_1', h_2', \cdots, h_s'$, of q will be congruent if $h_i' - h_i = h_k' - h_k \quad (i, k = 1, 2, \cdots, s)$. But in all there are $\binom{q-1}{s-1}$ arrangements of s integers yielding a sum q. Taking account of the possibility of permuting cyclically the (h)'s, we obtain $[R_s] = \frac{1}{s}\binom{2p}{s-1}$. This number is actually an integer for $\binom{q}{s} = \frac{q}{s}\binom{q-1}{s-1}$ is an integer and s is prime to q. In particular $[R_2] = p$. We can similarly obtain $[R_s]$ whatever r, but we will merely indicate here the formula, easy to obtain, $[R_2] = \frac{1}{2}r^2(q-1)$.

125. *Formula for R_2.* If we assume that the infinitesimal algebraic cycles in the vicinity of the multiple points are all independent, we have $R_2 = [R_2] + B\kappa$. To prove that this is actually the case, it is sufficient to show that the infini-

tesimal hypersurfaces in the neighborhood of these points are algebraically distinct. We shall merely give some rapid indications on this question:— A, B being any two of them we take suitable multiples C, D of the hyperplane sections passing the one through A and the other through B, then two hypersurfaces, C_1, D_1, of the same systems infinitely near C, D respectively, but passing through neither A nor B. We have $[C^i D^{p-i}] = [C_1^i D_1^{p-i}]$, $i > 0$, hence at once $[A^i B^{p-i}] = 0$. By considering then two hypersurfaces through A, it may be shown that $[A^p] \neq 0$. Finally $[A^i H^{p-i}] = 0$, $p > i > 0$, for every H of W_p not passing through the multiple points. By a reasoning of Severi's follows readily that the infinitesimal hypersurfaces of W_p are algebraically distinct. Moreover, if $H_1, H_2, \cdots, H_{[\rho]}$ form a base for the hypersurfaces of W_p when we neglect the multiple points, there is no relation between the (H)'s and the infinitesimal hypersurfaces. These facts have been established by other methods for the case $p = 2$ by Severi, Bagnera, and de Franchis.

126. Let us pass now to the determination of the invariants $[\sigma_s]$, σ_s, σ. Let Δ be a non-zero s-cycle of V_p such that no sum of less than m of the cycles $T^k \Delta$ be ~ 0 but $\sum_0^{m-1} T^k \Delta \sim 0$. If Δ_1 is a cycle which is not homologous to the cycles $T^k \Delta_1$ $(0 < k < m)$, we can take $\Delta = T\Delta_1 - \Delta_1$. Let δ be the cycle corresponding to Δ on W_p. If $k\delta$ bounds on W_p, $\Delta + T\Delta + \cdots + T^{k-1}\Delta$ must bound on V_p. Hence according to the assumption made, we must have $k = m$. Moreover, we have actually $m\delta \sim 0$ and therefore *δ is a zero divisor for the s-cycles of W_p*. Are we really dealing with actual zero divisors? This is certainly the case if W_p is without multiple points, that is, if there are no coincidence points on V_p. Then, if $m = q$, prime, σ_s is of the form m^a and in particular $\sigma = \sigma_1 = q^r$; $r = 2p'/(q-1)$, $p - p'$ being the genus of the submatrix maintained invariant by T.

Let us return now to the case where there is a finite number of coincidence points. I say that then $\sigma_1 = \sigma_{2p-2} = \sigma = 1$. For, if A is a finite hypersurface of V_p, algebraically distinct from its transformed by the powers of T, B a variable hypersurface of the same continuous system as A, while A', B' are the corresponding hypersurfaces of W_p, then $A' - B'$ is to be considered as a divisor of zero and we obtain all those divisors in this manner since they are all algebraic. Now, let B approach a coincidence point. B' will approach a singular point, and at the limit $A' - B'$ will have become a zero divisor *if we consider the singular points as ordinary points*, but certainly not if we bring into play the infinitesimal hypersurfaces in the neighborhood of the singular point, for then $A' - B'$ will be equal to a sum of such hypersurfaces. Hence on the variety with ordinary singularities birationally equivalent to W_p, $A' - B'$ will not be a zero divisor and we shall have $\sigma = 1$. This is in agreement with the results of Severi, Bagnera, and de Franchis.

§ 4. Integrals of the first kinds. Invariants ρ, $[\rho]$, ρ_0

127. When W_p is the image of an involution generated by a transformation (1), it possesses p' simple integrals of the first kind, hence if $p' = 0$, W_p is regular.

Let us assume then W_p regular. When we express the coördinates in terms of the (u)'s, a k-uple integral of the first kind must assume the form

$$\sum A_{j_1 j_2 \cdots j_k} \int\int \cdots \int du_{j_1}\, du_{j_2} \cdots du_{j_k},$$

and remain invariant when we apply T. We may assume T in the form (2) since the (α)'s have nothing to do with the question. We must then have $n_{j_1} + n_{j_2} + \cdots + n_{j_k} \equiv 0$, mod. m, unless $A_{j_1 j_2 \cdots j_k} = 0$. Thus, every integral of the first kind is a linear combination of the integrals invariant under T. The converse proposition is obvious.

I say now that *if T is of the form (2), does not maintain invariant any reducible system of integrals of the first kind, and maintains invariant a k-uple integral of the first kind $(k > 1)$, then W_p does not contain any congruence of spaces.**

By *congruence* we mean a system of algebraic manifolds such that one and only one passes through a given point of W_p. For there will be an invariant integral such as $\int\int \cdots \int du_1\, du_2 \cdots du_k$. The variety W_p contains a ruled k-dimensional variety M'_k, locus of straight lines of which one goes through every point of the variety. Such a variety possesses no k-uple integrals of the first kind—this can be proved as done by Picard for $k = 2$. Hence on M'_k the above integral reduces to a constant. It follows that on M'_k, and therefore on the corresponding variety M_k of V_p, several of the differentials du, for example $du_1, du_2, \cdots, du_l$, vanish, and hence at once that $u_1, u_2, \cdots, u_l$ form a system of reducible integrals invariant by T.† This contradiction proves our theorem.

128. When Ω is of the type of No. 118 with $r > 1$ and T does not transform into itself any system of reducible integrals, there will certainly be invariant integrals. For the (n)'s are certainly not composed with r times the same set of μ exponents. There will then certainly be two whose sum is m and therefore at least one double integral will be invariant. In particular, *if Ω is pure and $r \geqq 2$, W_p does not possess any congruence of spaces.*

129. Let us show that *what we have just stated still holds if $r = 1$ and m is a prime number, $q > 7$.* For since the characteristic equation corresponding to T is irreducible there will then be no system of reducible integrals invariant by T. Everything reduces therefore to establishing that among the (n)'s we can always find a set $n_1, n_2, \cdots, n_k$ whose sum is divisible by q. The

* For $p = 2$ this has been proved by Enriques and Severi.

† *Castelnuovo*, Rendiconti dei Lincei (1905).

condition $k > 2$ must be added as follows from the fact that none of the (n)'s may be conjugate to each other.

If $p < n_j < 2p + 1 = q$, we can replace n_j by $-q + n_j$. Hence, modulo q, $n_1, n_2, \cdots, n_p$ are nothing more nor less than the numbers $1, 2, \cdots, p$ affected with an arbitrary combination of signs and we have to prove the following: Whatever these signs, we can always form, with some of the numbers of the set, a sum divisible by q.

Now, we may at once verify the following: If the integers $1, 2, 3, 4, 5$ are not all affected with the same sign, we may form with them a zero sum except when 1 or 2 are taken with one sign and the four others with the opposite sign. In these two cases, it is easy to verify that we may form a sum equal to ± 11. Hence the theorem is true for $q = 11$. Assume $q > 11$. We can change all the signs, hence we may assume 3 taken positively. Let then α be the first integer > 5 taken negatively. If $\alpha = 6$, we have the following three possibilities as to the signs of the first six integers and for which there may be doubt:

$$1, 2, 3, 4, 5, -6; \qquad -1, 2, 3, 4, 5, -6; \qquad 1, -2, 3, 4, 5, -6.$$

In the first two cases $2 + 4 - 6 = 0$ and in the third $-2 + 3 + 5 - 6 = 0$. If $\alpha > 6$ and α is even, in the only doubtful case where $3, 4, 5$ are all taken with the same sign $+$, the combination $\frac{1}{2}\alpha - 1$, $\frac{1}{2}\alpha + 1$, $-\alpha$ gives a zero sum, while if α is odd, the combination $\frac{1}{2}(\alpha + 1)$, $\frac{1}{2}(\alpha - 1)$, $-\alpha$ yields the same result. The theorem is therefore proved.

130. *Numbers* ρ, $[\rho]$, ρ_0. Let us take again for matrix Ω the matrix of No. 118. In the notations used above $[\rho]$ is the number of algebraic cycles of V_p of type

$$\sum_{\mu, \nu, s} a_{\lambda, \nu, s} \sum_{t=1}^{2\mu} (\delta_\lambda^t, \delta_\nu^{s+t}).$$

The period of $\int\int du_j\, du_k$ with respect to this cycle is

$$\sum a_{\lambda, \nu, s} \sum_t \left(\tau_{j\lambda} \tau_{k\nu} \epsilon^{n_j(t-1)+n_k(s+t-1)} - \tau_{j\nu} \tau_{k\lambda} \epsilon^{n_j(s+t-1)+n_k(t-1)} \right),$$

and it is zero as we might expect when $n_j + n_k \not\equiv 0$, mod. m, whereas for $n_j \equiv -n_k$, mod. m, it has the form

$$\sum \gamma_{\lambda\nu}(\epsilon^{n_j}, \epsilon^{-n_j}) \tau_{j\lambda} \tau_{k\nu} \qquad (\gamma_{\lambda\nu}(x, y) = -\gamma_{\nu\lambda}(y, x)),$$

where $\gamma_{\lambda\nu}$ is a polynomial with integral coefficients. Hence $[\rho] = (1 + k_0)$ where k_0 is the number defined in No. 107. As to the other invariants, we have

$$\rho_0 = [R_2] - [\rho], \qquad \rho = [\rho] + B \cdot \kappa.$$

In particular, if $m = q$, prime, and if τ is general, then $[\rho] = 1$,

$\rho_0 = \frac{1}{2}r^2(q-1) - 1$. If $r = 1$, we never have $n_j + n_k \equiv 0$, mod. m, all the periods of the nature in question are zero, hence $[\rho] = [R_2]$, $\rho_0 = 0$. Thus the variety of rank m corresponding to the matrix

$$\left\| 1, \epsilon^{n_j}, \cdots, \epsilon^{(2p-1)n_j} \right\| \qquad (j = 1, 2, \cdots, p)$$

has neither double integrals of the first kind nor double integrals of the second kind.

Chapter IV. A class of algebraic curves with cyclic group and their Jacobi varieties

§ 1. Integrals of the first kind of the curve $y^q = \prod_i (x - a_i)^{\alpha_i}$ (q odd prime)

131. The object of this chapter is the investigation of the curves

$$y^q = \prod_{i=1}^{r+2} (x - a_i)^{\alpha_i} \qquad (1) \qquad (q \text{ odd prime})$$

characterized by the possession of a cyclic group of genus zero. Their importance consists in that their Jacobi varieties are the most interesting example of the varieties discussed in Chapter II. Furthermore they belong to a class much studied by various authors especially in regard to the presence of reducible systems of integrals of the first kind. We believe that the results here given constitute the most far-reaching investigation along that line. The restriction of q to odd primes is of course narrowing, yet it is amply compensated by the greater elegance of the results obtained. Very likely much of the discussion that follows holds for any q, and perhaps even when the group is of genus other than zero.

132. Let p be the genus of (1) which we shall call C_p in the sequence, and T the cyclic transformation,

$$x = x', \qquad y = \epsilon y'; \qquad \epsilon = e^{\frac{2\pi i}{q}}.$$

T leaves no rational point function on C_p invariant other than those rational in x alone. $R(x)$ being such a function, any other can be expressed as a rational function of $R(x)$, if and only if x itself can be, which requires that $R(x) = (ax + b)/(cx + d)$. Hence x is characterized by being invariant under T, and, up to a projective transformation, by the fact that any other point function on C_p invariant under T is rational in x. Thus x is determined by properties invariant under any birational transformation. The anharmonic ratios of the values of x at the critical points, or coincidence points of T, are therefore invariant relatively to birational transformations, and as they completely determine C_p those which are functionally independent among them can be taken as the independent moduli of the curve.

The point $A_i(a_i, 0)$ is *critical* for the function $y(x)$ if α_i is not divisible by q. If $r' + 2$ is the number of critical points, *C_p depends upon $r' - 1$ moduli.*

Let C'_p be a curve

$$y^q = \prod_i (x - a'_i)^{\alpha'_i}$$

birationally equivalent to C_p and this in such a manner that T becomes a transformation of similar form say

$$x = x', \qquad y = \epsilon^k y'$$

for C'_p. Let

$$x' = R_1(x, y), \qquad y' = R_2(x, y)$$

be the transformation changing C_p into C'_p. Since R_1 and R_2^q are invariant under T, R_1 must be rational in x, and as x must be rational in R_1 we have $R_1(x) = (ax + b)/(cx + d)$. The conditions relatively to

$$R_2(x, y) = R_2(x, \prod_i (x - a_i)^{\frac{\alpha_i}{q}})$$

require that R_2 be of the form $y^n \cdot R(x)$, where n is an integer prime to q. Hence the transformation from C_p to C'_p must be of the form

$$x' = \frac{ax + b}{cx + d}, \qquad y' = y^n \cdot R(x). \tag{2}$$

Conversely if C_p can be changed into C'_p by a transformation of the form (2), (2) is birational. For let λ, μ be two integers such that $n\lambda + q\mu = 1$. Then

$$y = y^{n\lambda + q\mu} = y'^{\lambda} \cdot S_1(x) = y'^{\lambda} \cdot S_2(x'),$$

where S_1, S_2 are rational functions. This is sufficient to show that x, y are rational in x', y'.

It is readily seen that a suitable transformation (2) will reduce C_p to

$$y^q = \prod_i (x - a_i)^{\alpha'_i},$$

where the (α')'s are subjected to the sole condition of being congruent modulo q to the numbers $n\alpha_i$, n being an arbitrary integer. In particular the (α')'s may thus be replaced by their least residues modulo q, and then the (a)'s remaining will all be critical points. We shall assume that this has already been done, the number of critical points being $r + 2$, so that C_p depends upon $r - 1$ moduli.

If we examine the behavior of y at infinity we find that there is a critical point there corresponding to an exponent $-\sum \alpha_i$. Hence the sum of the exponents corresponding to *all* critical points is divisible by q.

133. Let us assume then that $a_{r+2} = \infty$ so that the equation is in the form

$$y^q = \prod_{i=1}^{r+1} (x - a_i)^{\alpha_i}. \tag{3}$$

As the sum of the (α)'s for all critical points is divisible by q, we may assume that the $r+1$ exponents here indicated are prime to q as well as their sum and are their own least positive residues modulo q. Each critical point counts for $q-1$ branch points of the Riemann surface representing the function $y(x)$ and there are no others. As the surface is q-sheeted, we have $(r+2)(q-1) = 2(p+q-1)$, therefore $p = \frac{1}{2}r(q-1)$.

Any integral of the first kind is of the form

$$\sum_{n=0}^{q-1} \int \frac{R_n(x)}{y^n}\,dx,$$

where the (R)'s are rational functions. If we apply T^k it becomes

$$\sum_n \epsilon^{nk} \int \frac{R_n(x)}{y^n}\,dx.$$

Summing with respect to k it is found that

$$\int \frac{R_n(x)}{y^n}\,dx$$

is of the first kind. Hence at once $R_0 \equiv 0$. Moreover by considering what happens at the critical points we find readily that this last integral is of the form

$$u = \int \frac{\prod_{i=1}^{r+1}(x-a_i)^{\beta_i}}{y^n}\,\phi(x)\,dx$$

where ϕ is a polynomial. Any other integral is then linearly dependent upon those such as u—a result due to Königsberger.

134. In order that u be of the first kind the following inequalities must be satisfied:

$$\text{(4)} \qquad \begin{cases} \beta_i - \dfrac{n\alpha_i}{q} > -1 & (i = 1, 2, \cdots, r+1) \\ \sum \dfrac{n\alpha_i}{q} \sum \beta_i - r' > 0, & \end{cases}$$

$r'-1$ being the degree of ϕ. To take the (β)'s as small as possible is tantamount to changing the degree of ϕ. Denoting as usual by $[m]$ the least integer contained in the positive number m, let us take then $\beta_i = [n\alpha_i/q]$ so that all but the last of (4) will be satisfied. The second may be written

$$r' < \left(\left[\sum \frac{n\alpha_i}{q}\right] - \sum \beta_i\right) + \left(\sum \frac{n\alpha_i}{q} - \left[\sum \frac{n\alpha_i}{q}\right]\right).$$

The second parenthesis is positive and < 1,

$$\therefore \quad \left[\sum \frac{n\alpha_i}{q}\right] - \sum \left[\frac{n\alpha_i}{q}\right] \geqq r' > 0 .$$

Conversely if this inequality is satisfied u is of the first kind whatever the polynomial ϕ of degree $r' - 1$. For it is only necessary to verify the last of (4). Now since neither n nor $\sum \alpha_i$ are divisible by q,

$$\sum \frac{n\alpha_i}{q} - \sum \beta_i - r' > \left[\sum \frac{n\alpha_i}{q}\right] - \sum \left[\frac{n\alpha_i}{q}\right] - r' \geqq 0,$$

as was to be proved.

Thus for every n there are r' integrals of the first kind, where

$$r' = \left[\sum \frac{n\alpha_i}{q}\right] - \sum \left[\frac{n\alpha_i}{q}\right].$$

134. When C_p is transformed by T its Jacobi variety undergoes the transformation $u_j' = \epsilon^{n_j} \cdot u_j \quad (j = 1, 2, \cdots, p)$, where $u_1, u_2, \cdots, u_p$ are p independent integrals of the first kind such as u, with n_j corresponding to n. The corresponding value r_j of r' denotes the number of times that the multiplier ϵ^{n_j} is repeated. But if r_j' corresponds to $\epsilon^{-n_j} = \epsilon^{q-n_j}$ and if the (n)'s are all included between *one* and q, then

$$r_j + r_j' = \left[\sum \frac{n_j\, \alpha_i}{q}\right] + \left[\sum \frac{(q - n_j)\, \alpha_i}{q}\right] - \sum \left[\frac{n_j\, \alpha_i}{q}\right] - \sum \left[\frac{(q - n_j)\, \alpha_i}{q}\right] = r .$$

Hence the complex multiplication corresponding to T is of the type which we have studied. The multipliers are the roots of an irreducible equation of degree $q - 1$ whose rth power is the characteristic equation. These multipliers, it is scarcely necessary to point out, are all imaginary, each being a rational function of its conjugate—in fact its inverse. This of course does not allow us to apply without a preliminary discussion the formulas of Chapter II, since the Riemann matrices are by no means the most general of their type. It is nevertheless remarkable that if the critical points are arbitrary the formulas for the indices of the Jacobi variety are the same as for the most general Abelian variety of similar type.

The integer r, equal to the number of critical points decreased by two, will play the same part as in Chapter II, and we observe at once that if $r = 1$, one of the two numbers r_j, r_j' is always zero.

135. Let now ω be any period of u. We have

$$\omega = \sum_{\mu=0}^{r} \epsilon^{n\nu_\mu} (1 - \epsilon^{n\nu_{\mu+1}}) \cdot \int_{x_0}^{a_{\mu+1}} du \qquad (\nu_{\mu_0} = 0).$$

Also

$$\epsilon^{n\nu_\mu}(1 - \epsilon^{n\nu_{\mu+1}}) = (1 - \epsilon^n)\cdot g_\mu(\epsilon^n),$$

where g_μ is a polynomial with integral coefficients. Hence

$$\omega = (1 - \epsilon^n)\sum_{\mu=0}^{r} g_\mu(\epsilon^n)\cdot\int_{x_0}^{a_{\mu+1}} du.$$

On the other hand

$$\tau_\mu = -(1 - \epsilon^n)\cdot\int_{x_0}^{a_\mu} du - \epsilon^n(1 - \epsilon^{-n})\cdot\int_{x_0}^{a_{\mu+1}} du = (1 - \epsilon^n)\cdot\int_{a_\mu}^{a_{\mu+1}} du$$

is a period, and so is $\epsilon^{nh}\tau_\mu$ as well. The (γ)'s in the sequence designating polynomials with integral coefficients, we have

$$\omega - \gamma_r(\epsilon)\tau_r = (1 - \epsilon^n)\sum_{\mu=0}^{r-1} g'_\mu(\epsilon^n)\cdot\int_{x_0}^{a_{\mu+1}} du$$

$$(g'_\mu = g_\mu, \qquad \mu < r - 1; \qquad g'_{r-1} = g_{r-1} + g_r).$$

This reasoning may be continued until we have finally

$$\omega - \sum_{\mu=1}^{r}\gamma_\mu(\epsilon^n)\tau_\mu = \gamma_0(\epsilon^n)(1 - \epsilon^n)\int_{x_0}^{a_1} du.$$

The left-hand side is a period, hence the other side must be one also. But the corresponding circuit in the x plane can only surround the critical point a_1, hence it is a zero cycle of C_p and $\gamma_0 = 0$. Another way of seeing it is to remark that the second side of the equation like the first must be independent of x_0 and as it is zero for $x_0 = a_1$, it must vanish identically. We have then $\omega = \sum_{\mu=1}^{r}\gamma_\mu(\epsilon^n)\tau_\mu$. If in place of n we had n_j, ϵ^n would have to be replaced by ϵ^{n_j}, whence follows that the period matrix is equivalent to one composed with the arrays,

$$\tau = \|\tau_{j\mu}\|; \qquad \|1, \epsilon^{n_j}, \epsilon^{2n_j}, \cdots, \epsilon^{(q-2)n_j}\|$$
$$(j = 1, 2, \cdots, p;\ \mu = 1, 2, \cdots, r),$$

where

$$\tau_{j\mu} = \int_{a_\mu}^{a_{\mu+1}} du.$$

Remark: It is clear that instead of taking for limits of integration two (a)'s of consecutive indices we could take any two (a)'s provided that the quantities $\tau_{j\mu}$ are not related by a linear equation

$$\sum_\mu \gamma'_\mu(\epsilon^{n_j})\tau_{j\mu} = 0 \qquad (j = 1, 2, \cdots, p).$$

136. *Weierstrass points.* We recall that a point A of an algebraic curve of genus p is said to be a *Weierstrass point* if the excluded orders of infinity for rational point functions of which it is the sole pole do not form the series

$1, 2, \cdots, p$. According to Weierstrass the number of such points is finite and > 0 if $p > 0$ (lacunary theorem). Let t be a variable such that a certain region around the origin in the t plane be in point-to-point correspondence with the vicinity of A on the curve. We may choose p integrals of the first kind $u_1, u_2, \cdots, u_p$, such that near A

$$u_i = t^{s_i} \mathfrak{P}_i(t),$$

where $s_1 < s_2 < \cdots < s_p$, and the $(\mathfrak{P})$'s are holomorphic functions near $t = 0$ and do not vanish there. Of course the choice of the (u)'s is not unique but the (s)'s are perfectly determined and in fact they are the excluded orders for A, which is then a Weierstrass point if and only if

$$m = \sum s_i - \frac{p(p+1)}{2} > 0.$$

The integer m is called the *order* of the point. It is at once obvious that this order is invariant under birational transformations and hence that a birational transformation of the curve into itself simply permutes these points. Hurwitz has shown* that if the curve is not hyperelliptic $m < \frac{1}{2}p(p-1)$, whereas for every Weierstrass point of hyperelliptic curves $m = \frac{1}{2}p(p-1)$.

137. Let us now return to the curves which we are investigating and choose for the r_j integrals belonging to n_j the following:

$$\int \frac{(x - a_i)^{\gamma_j - 1} \prod_{i=1}^{r+1} (x - a_h)^{\beta_h^j} \, dx}{y^{n_j}} \qquad (\gamma_j = 1, 2, \cdots, r_j),$$

and for the variable t relatively to $(a_i, 0)$,

$$t = (x - a_i)^{\frac{1}{q}}.$$

To show that it is suitable observe that in the neighborhood of the point $(a_i, 0)$, y is holomorphic in t, and in fact

$$y = t^{\alpha_i} \mathfrak{P}(t^q),$$

where $\mathfrak{P}(z)$ is holomorphic in z near the origin and does not vanish there. Hence if e, e' are integers such that $e\alpha_i + e'q = 1$ (we shall frequently write $e \equiv 1/\alpha_i$, mod. q, when e satisfies such a relation), we have

$$t = y^e (x - a_i)^{e'} \mathfrak{P}(x - a_i).$$

It is then verified at once that the integral written above has a development near $t = 0$, of the form

$$t^{(\beta_i^j + \gamma_j)q - n_j\alpha_i} \mathfrak{P}_1(t^q),$$

*Mathematische Annalen, vol. 41, (1893).

where $\mathfrak{P}_1$ behaves like $\mathfrak{P}$. That this function contains only terms in t^q is seen at once by observing that the effect of T on both t and the integral is merely to multiply them by powers of ϵ.

The exponents $(\beta_i^j + \gamma_j) q - n_j \alpha_i$ form the set of integers $s_1, s_2, \cdots, s_p$ for C_p and the point A_i.

We may apply to C_p a birational transformation such that α_i be replaced by unity and n_j by $n'_j \equiv n_j \alpha_i$, mod. q, $0 < n'_j < q$. Then β_j will be replaced by $[n'_j/q] = 0$, and the set of the (s)'s becomes the set

$$\gamma_j q - n'_j \qquad (\gamma_i = 1, 2, \cdots, r_j; j = 1, 2, \cdots, q-1).$$

They certainly do not form the set $1, 2, \cdots, p$ if $r > 1$ and the numbers r_j are not all equal. Hence *the critical points are all Weierstrass points when* $r > 1$, *unless the numbers* r_j *are all equal.*

Assume now $r = 1$. Then $\gamma_j = 0$, or 1, and we have to deal with the set $q - n'_j$ $(j = 1, 2, \cdots, p)$ which is up to a factor mod. q the set of the (n)'s. Hence if the set of (n)'s is not congruent mod. q to the set $1, 2, \cdots, p$, the three critical points are Weierstrass points.

138. We shall now apply similar considerations to the proof of a very useful theorem:—*If two curves,* C_p, C'_p,

$$y^q = \prod_i (x - a_i)^{\alpha_i}, \qquad y^q = \prod_i (x - a'_i)^{\alpha'_i},$$

are birationally equivalent through a transformation S, *this transformation will be of type* (2) *if and only if it transforms some critical point into another.*

The condition is obviously necessary. Let us show that it is sufficient. Assume then that S transforms $A_i(a_i, 0)$ into $A'_i(a'_i, 0)$, these two points being both at finite distance, which is not a restriction. Let $u_1, u_2, \cdots, u_p$ be the integrals of No. 137 corresponding to A_i and consider in particular

$$u_p = t^{s_p} \mathfrak{P}(t^q).$$

It is determined up to a constant factor, for the development of $c_1 u_1 + c_2 u_2 + \cdots + c_p u_p$ begins with a term in t^{s_i} if c_i is the first coefficient c not zero. Hence it begins with a term in t^{s_p} only if all the (c)'s except c_p are zero.

Let now (x, y), (x', y') be two corresponding points of C_p, C'_p through S and set $x' - a'_i = t'^q$. The two variables t, t' are obviously holomorphic functions of each other near the origin. Hence

$$t' = t \cdot \mathfrak{P}(t).$$

($\mathfrak{P}$ here as in the sequence designates a function of the type already described.) In making this substitution in u_p it becomes

$$u'_p = t'^{s_p}(a + bt'^q \cdots).$$

This shows that the integral corresponding to s_p for A_i on C_p corresponds to it also for A'_i on C'_p, as might indeed be expected. Now

$$u_p = \int \frac{(x - a_i)^\delta R(x)}{y^n} dx, \qquad u'_p = \int \frac{(x' - a'_i)^{\delta'} R'(x')}{y'^{n'}} dx'$$

where R, R' are rational functions which neither vanish nor become infinite at a_i, a'_i respectively, and moreover

$$\frac{\delta - n\alpha_i}{q} = \frac{\delta' - n'\alpha'_i}{q} = \frac{s_p}{q} - 1.$$

Near $x = a_i$, $x' = a'_i$, we have then a relation

$$(x - a_i)^{\frac{s_p}{q}-1} \mathfrak{P}(x - a_i)\, dx = (x' - a'_i)^{\frac{s_p}{q}-1} \mathfrak{P}'(x' - a'_i)\, dx'.$$

When x approaches a_i, x' must approach a'_i; hence if we integrate, the constants of integration must be made equal to zero. Integrating, then raising to the power q/s_p, we obtain

$$(x - a_i)\mathfrak{P}_1(x - a_i) = (x' - a'_i)\mathfrak{P}'_1(x' - a'_i).$$

This shows that x' is holomorphic in x in the vicinity of $x = a_i$. But there is a relation

$$x' = R(x, y) = \sum_{s=0}^{q-1} R_s(x) y^s,$$

where the (R)'s are rational functions. If the (R)'s other than R_0 were $\neq 0$, x' would have an algebraic critical point at a'_i, hence $x' = R_0(x)$. Similarly x is rational in x', and therefore $x' = (ax + b)/(cx + d)$. But also

$$y' = R'(x, y) = \sum_{s=0}^{q-1} R'_s(x) y^s.$$

Now y'^q is rational in x' and therefore in x, which requires that of the (R')'s only one, and that one of index > 0, does not vanish. The theorem is therefore proved.

Remarks: I. If the equation of S for y is

$$y' = y^\lambda \cdot R(x),$$

it is seen that its effect upon the integral u_j corresponding to n_j is to transform it into an integral corresponding to λn_j, that is, all the (n)'s are multiplied by λ, mod. q. But $s_p \equiv - n_p \alpha_i \equiv - n'_p \alpha'_i$, mod. q,

$$\therefore \quad \frac{n'_p}{n_p} \equiv \frac{\alpha_i}{\alpha'_i} \equiv \lambda, \text{ mod. } q.$$

II. The equations of the transformation T' of C'_p corresponding to T on C_p

are $x = x'$, $y = \epsilon^\lambda y'$, that is, by virtue of S the cyclic transformations apparent for each curve are transformed into powers of each other. If we recall then the invariant meaning given to x in No. 132 relatively to birational transformations we see at once that S transforms the set of (A)'s into the set of (A')'s. Hence *if a birational transformation changes a single point A_i into an A'_i it does so for all of them.*

139. A particularly interesting case is that where C_p and C'_p coincide. According to the remark just made, *a birational transformation of C_p into itself either permutes the set of (A)'s with a similar set having not a single point in common with the first and corresponding to a cyclic transformation of order q not a power of T, or else it maintains the set in question completely invariant.* Assume then S to be of the second type and let ν be its order. Its equations for a suitable choice of x will assume the form

$$x' = \eta x, \qquad y' = y^\lambda R(x); \qquad (\eta = e^{\frac{2k\pi i}{\nu}}; \qquad \lambda^\nu \equiv 1, \text{ mod. } q).$$

Incidentally if $\lambda > 1$, ν is *not prime* to $q - 1$. If a_i is a critical point, $\eta^s a_i$ is one also, and the corresponding exponent α can be taken to be $\lambda^s \alpha_i$. Also if one of the points $x = 0$, $x = \infty$, is critical, it will be maintained invariant by S, hence then (Remark I, No. 138), $\lambda = 1$. There are two distinct possibilities:

(*a*) $\lambda \not\equiv 1$, mod. q. C_p can be reduced to

$$y^q = \phi(x)\cdot[\phi(\eta^{-1}x)]^\lambda \cdots [\phi(\eta^{1-\nu}x)]^{\lambda^{\nu-1}}$$

where ϕ is a polynomial with $\phi(0) \neq 0$. The critical points of this curve are not completely arbitrary. As our investigation will be limited to curves with critical points as arbitrary as possible for each type the only curve of this nature that we shall have to consider is the curve with three critical points, and $\nu = 3$, reducible to:

$$y^q = (x-1)(x-\eta)^\lambda(x-\eta^2)^{\lambda^2}, \qquad (\lambda^3 = 1, \text{ mod. } q;\ \eta = e^{\frac{2\pi i}{3}}),$$

and which presents itself only when $q - 1$ is a multiple of *three*. It may be found directly that the equations of S are

$$x' = \eta x, \qquad y' = \eta^{\frac{1+\lambda+\lambda^2}{q}} y^\lambda.$$

(*b*) $\lambda \equiv 1$, mod. q. C_p can then be reduced to

$$y^q = x^\alpha \prod_i (x^\nu - a_i^\nu)^{\alpha_i}.$$

The only curve of this type with arbitrary critical points is reducible to one of the two hyperelliptic curves

$$y^q = \frac{x^2 - a^2}{x^2 - b^2}, \qquad y^q = x^2 - a^2.$$

For both curves, S is the ordinary binary transformation characteristic of hyperelliptic curves. This transformation is permutable with T.

Remark: It is easy to show that if S maintains every A invariant then it is a T^k. For its equations must be

$$x' = x, \qquad y' = y \cdot R(x).$$

By direct substitution in the equation of C_p we find at once $R^q = 1$, hence $R = \epsilon^k$ which proves our assertion.

140. We can now show that if a transformation T' of order q has also one of the (A)'s for coincidence point then $T' = T^k$. In other words *a single coincidence point determines the rest of them and the corresponding cyclic group of order q as well.* For if we choose x properly the equations of T' will be

$$x' = \epsilon^n x, \qquad y' = y^\lambda \cdot R(x).$$

Since T' is of order q we must have $\lambda^q \equiv 1$, mod. q, and therefore according to Fermat's theorem, $\lambda \equiv 1$, mod. q, and we may take in fact $\lambda = 1$. C_p will then be reducible to the form

$$y^q = x^\alpha \prod_i (x^q - a_i^q)^{\alpha_i},$$

with α not divisible by q, if we assume as we may that the common coincidence point of T and T' is at the origin. By direct substitution it is found that we must have $R(x) = \epsilon^{n\alpha/q}$ with the condition that $n\alpha \equiv 0$, mod. q, if $T'^q = 1$. Hence we may take $n = 0$, and the equations of T' are finally $x' = x$, $y' = \epsilon^k \cdot y$ which shows that $T' = T^{-k}$ as was to be proved.

As a corollary if S permutes the (A)'s among themselves, STS^{-1} being a transformation such as above is a T^k, hence $ST = T^k \cdot S$. From this follows readily $S^j \cdot T = T^{k^j} \cdot S^j$. This shows that the group generated by the products of the powers of S and T is of order $q\nu$, where ν is the order of S. To obtain the exact relations existing between the transformations observe that $S^\nu \cdot T = T = T^{k^\nu} \cdot S^\nu$, hence $k^\nu \equiv 1$, mod. q. Moreover $k \not\equiv 1$, mod. q, else S would be permutable with T and this can only be when C_p is hyperelliptic and S is its ordinary binary transformation. This results from the fact proved in Chapter III, that the only cyclic transformations of the Jacobi variety of C_p permutable with T is the ordinary transformation, $u_i' = -u_i$ $(i = 1, 2, \cdots, p)$, to which corresponds only the ordinary binary transformation present in hyperelliptic curves, and none at all if the curve is not hyperelliptic. This case being set aside for the present, we must take for ν a root of the congruence other than one.

This being assumed, we find first

$$(S^j T^i)^n = T^l \cdot S^{nj}; \qquad l = ik^j \frac{(k^{nj} - 1)}{(k^j - 1)}.$$

It follows at once that in all cases $S^j\, T^i$ is either of order ν or of order q. It is certainly of order ν when: (*a*) there are no relations $S^\alpha = T^\beta$, $\alpha < \nu$; (*b*) $j \neq 0$; (*c*) k is a primitive root of its congruence.

141. Torelli has proved a proposition of which we shall make some very interesting applications:* *Two algebraic curves of same genus with identical period matrices as to sets of normal integrals of the first kind are birationally equivalent.*

It follows at once that if the period matrices of two sets of integrals of the first kind are equivalent the curves are still birationally equivalent. However of more interest to us is this immediate corollary: If a given algebraic curve possesses two distinct sets of integrals of the first kind with *identical* period matrices it possesses a birational transformation into itself by which

*Rendiconti dei Lincei (1913). [Added in 1922: Rosati has shown in the Palermo Rendiconti, vol. 44 (1920), that Torelli's theorem requires that the periods correspond to retrosections.—As a matter of fact, in the cases of interest in the sequence this condition is actually fulfilled, and moreover Torelli's theorem is not essential as I proceed to show.

Let y_1, $y_2 = T\cdot y_1$, $y_3 = T^2\cdot y_1$, $\cdots$, be the determinations of y. To each pair of loops aa_1, $aa_{\mu+1}$, of the x plane, corresponds in a well-known manner a cycle δ_k^μ of C_p, running entirely (save perhaps in the vicinity of a_1 and $a_{\mu+1}$) in the sheets y_k, y_{k+1} ($y_{q+1} = y_1$), of the Riemann surface of $y(x)$, and $\delta_k^\mu = T\cdot\delta_{k-1}^\mu$. The $2p$ cycles δ_k^μ ($\mu = 1, 2, \cdots, r$; $k = 1, 2, \cdots, q-1$) constitute precisely a fundamental system corresponding to the period matrix of No. 135.—Any birational transformation of the Jacobi variety, to occur later, shall have the property that *it induces permutations of the* (u)*'s and of the cycles* $\delta_1^\mu, \delta_2^\mu, \cdots$, *for each* μ, *of common order* $\neq 0$, *leaving the period matrix invariant.* Up to an ordinary transformation, this completely characterizes U, and I say that *correspondingly there is a birational transformation of* C_p *into itself, which is not a power of* T.

Let $C_p' = U\cdot C_p$. To the coincidence points $A_i(a_i, 0)$, of T on C_p, correspond those A_i' of $T' = UTU^{-1}$ on C_p', the indices being so chosen that if α_i' is the same for A_i' as α_i for A_i, the ratios α_i'/α_i are all congruent mod. q. This being done, we readily define a birational transformation S of C_p into C_p' such that $A_i' = S\cdot A_i$, and that the cycles $S\delta_1^\mu, S\delta_2^\mu, \cdots$, are cyclically permuted by T'. Observe that any birational transformation of order q of C_p', with the (A')'s for coincidence points, is necessarily a T'^h (No. 140). Now the (u)'s may be defined, up to a constant factor, by the nature of their expansions at a critical point, whence follows readily that their transformed by U on C_p' play the same part for T' as the (u)'s for T (i.e., T' merely multiplies them by constants). On considering the periods with respect to the cycles $U\cdot\delta_k^\mu$, and recalling the assumptions as to U, we see that they cannot be the same as the cycles $S\cdot\delta_k^\mu$ or $T'^hS\cdot\delta_k^\mu$, of same indices, for the first are not cyclically permuted by T', while the last are. Hence $U \neq ST'^h$, and $S^{-1}U$ is a birational transformation of C_p' into itself not a T'^h, and as there is a similar one for C_p, our assertion is proved.

We may also verify that the Rosati condition is fulfilled. For each of the sets of $2p$ cycles $U\cdot\delta_k^\mu$, $S\cdot\delta_k^\mu$ ($k < q$), of C_p', has this property: If the Riemann surface of C_p' is cut open along them, it is reduced to a two-cell, and these cells are reducible to each other by a homeomorphism, wherein the cuts $U\delta_k^\mu$, $S\delta_k^\mu$ correspond to one another. Moreover there are integrals of the first kind with identical period matrices with respect to these cycles. From this follows readily enough the existence of two distinct sets of retrosections, with identical canonical period matrices, hence Rosati's condition is verified, and as previously C_p' possesses a birational transformation into itself.

Observe that from the discussion of No. 141 it will appear that unless the curve is hyperelliptic, the order of the birational transformation of the curve is the same as that of U.]

the integrals of one system are transformed into those of the other. If then $u_1, u_2, \cdots, u_p$ and $u'_1, u'_2, \cdots, u'_p$ are the two sets of integrals, $M(x, y)$ any point of the curve, $M'(x', y')$ its transformed through S, we have

$$u'_j(x', y') = u_j(x, y) + \delta_j \qquad (j = 1, 2, \cdots, p),$$

where the (δ)'s are constants. Since the two sets of integrals are distinct the algebraic correspondence defined by these relations is *singular* and therefore $S \neq 1$.

In particular if the period matrix is changed identically into itself by a certain equivalence the curve possesses a corresponding birational transformation.

We have already remarked that the transformation of the Jacobi variety defined by

$$u_j(x', y') = -u_j(x, y) + \delta_j \qquad (j = 1, 2, \cdots, p)$$

determines a birational transformation of the curve only when the latter is hyperelliptic. If $u_j(x', y') = u_j(x, y) + \delta_j$ were to determine a birational transformation of the curve, M and M' would be distinct points of a linear series of order and dimension one and therefore $p = 0$. Hence, except for the ordinary transformation possessed by hyperelliptic curves, to each birational transformation U of a curve of genus $p > 0$ corresponds a non ordinary transformation of its Jacobi variety.—Under the following form this result will be found very useful: *If to U of C_p, non hyperelliptic, corresponds an ordinary transformation of the Jacobi variety, U reduces to the identity.*

142. Returning to the C_p which we are investigating we shall show below that when $r > 1$, and the (a)'s are arbitrary, then $1 + h = q - 1$, where h is the index of multiplication of the Jacobi variety. Exception must be made of the case where $r = 2$ and the integers r_j are all equal to unity. Save in that special case which shall be fully examined in its place, the complex multiplications of the variety are then all linearly dependent upon those determined by the powers of T, and therefore (No. 119) the only non ordinary cyclic transformations of the variety are the powers of T. We shall see that if C_p is hyperelliptic we are in the exceptional case. Thus, save in the exceptional case, if $r > 1$ the total group of C_p is the obvious cyclic group of order q, for otherwise there would have to exist non ordinary cyclic transformations of the Jacobi variety other than the powers of T.

It follows that when the points $A_i\ (a_i, 0)$ are arbitrary and $r > 1$ there is no analogous set distinct from them on C_p, hence any transformation of the curve into itself must maintain them invariant and therefore it is of type (2).

143. Let us show that when $r > 1$ it is not possible that of the two numbers r_j, r_{q-j}, one be always zero. For with a suitable choice of integrals of the

first kind the period matrix would take the form

$$\left\|\begin{matrix} \omega, & 0, & 0, & \cdots, & 0 \\ 0, & \omega, & \cdot & \cdots, & \cdot \\ \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot \\ 0, & \cdot & \cdot & \cdots, & \omega \end{matrix}\right\|,$$

$$\omega = \| 1, \epsilon^{n_j}, \cdots, \epsilon^{(q-2)n_j} \| \qquad \left(j = 1, 2, \cdots, \frac{q-1}{2}\right),$$

and depends upon no arbitrary constants whereas as we know it should depend upon $r - 1 > 0$ of them.

144. *Hyperelliptic curves.* The curve C_p being assumed hyperelliptic let S be its ordinary binary transformation. It transforms the point (x, y) of C_p into a point (x', y') such that

$$\int \prod_i (x - a_i)^{\beta_i - \frac{n\alpha_i}{q}} dx$$

changes in sign when x is replaced by x'. Dividing two such differential expressions, then raising to the qth power we obtain a relation

$$\prod_i (x - a_i)^{\delta_i} = \prod_i (x' - a_i)^{\delta_i} \qquad (\delta_i \text{ integer})$$

It shows that when x approaches one of the (a)'s, x' approaches another. Hence S is of type (2) and by a proper choice of x we shall have merely $x' = -x$. The equations of the curve will then be

$$y^q = x^\alpha \prod_i (x^2 - b_i^2)^{\alpha_i}$$

As we must have $y' = y^n \cdot R(x)$, we find by direct substitution $n = 1$, $R = (-1)^\alpha$, and S will have for equations

$$x' = -x, \qquad y' = (-1)^\alpha \cdot y.$$

The only hyperelliptic curves with unrestricted critical points are reducible to one of the following two:

$$y^q = x^2 - a^2,$$
$$y^q = \frac{x^2 - a^2}{x^2 - b^2}.$$

In the first case where $r = 1$, we have $\alpha_1 = \alpha_2 = 1$ and the integers r_j and n_j are determined by $[2n_j/q] - r_j \geqq 0$ which shows that n_j must be $> q/2$ in order that $r_j = 1$. Hence n_j takes the values $p + 1, p + 2, \cdots, 2p$ and the period matrix is at once seen to be equivalent to

$$\| 1, \epsilon^j, \epsilon^{2j}, \cdots, \epsilon^{(q-2)j} \| \qquad (j = 1, 2, \cdots, p).$$

For $r = 2$ the curve may be reduced to such a form that $\alpha_1 = \alpha_2 = 1$,

$\alpha_3 = q - 1$. Hence

$$\left[\frac{n_j(q+1)}{q}\right] - \left[\frac{n_j(q-1)}{q}\right] - r_j = 1 - r_j \geqq 0.$$

Hence n_j can take all the values $1, 2, \cdots, p$ and to each corresponds exactly *one* integral, the period matrix being composed with:

$$\| \tau_{j1}, \tau_{j2} \|, \qquad \| 1, \epsilon^j, \cdots, \epsilon^{(q-2)j} \| \qquad (j = 1, 2, \cdots, p).$$

§ 2. Curves with three critical points

145. Our next object is the study of the C_p whose $r = 1$, and which is reducible to

$$y^q = (x - a_1)^{\alpha_1}(x - a_2)^{\alpha_2}.$$

Since $2p = q - 1$, we may assume $q > 3$, for, if $q = 3$, we have to deal with elliptic curves which offer no great interest.

Let g be a primitive root of q and set $n_j \equiv g^{e_j}$, mod. q. The period matrix is equivalent to:

$$\| \epsilon^{g^{e_j}}, \epsilon^{g^{e_j+1}}, \cdots, \epsilon^{g^{e_j+2p-1}} \| \qquad (j = 1, 2, \cdots, p).$$

In conformity with Chapter II, § 3, we must first ask ourselves if there exists a subgroup of order $\nu = p/p'$ of the cyclic group of the equation $(x^q - 1)/(x - 1) = 0$, maintaining invariant the multipliers $\epsilon^{g^{e_j}}$. This problem is equivalent to that of determining if there exists a factor p' of p such that if we add $2p'$ to one of the (e)'s we get another, mod. $(q - 1)$. Assume that such is the case. The period matrix may be put in the form

$$\| \epsilon^{g^{e_j}}, \epsilon^{g^{e_j+2p'}}, \cdots, \epsilon^{g^{e_j+2(\nu-1)p'}}, \epsilon^{g^{e_j+1}}, \epsilon^{g^{e_j+1+2p'}} \cdots \| \qquad (j = 1, 2, \cdots, p).$$

Let us range the integrals of the first kind in such an order that $u_{j+kp'}$ $(k \leqq \nu - 1)$ corresponds to $e_j + 2kp'$. We recognize then that under the assumptions made if we permute cyclically the columns of order $k\nu + 1$, $k\nu + 2, \cdots, (k + 1)\nu$ $(k = 0, 1, \cdots, 2p' - 1)$, in the period matrix in the form just written, and permute at the same time cyclically the rows $j, j + p', \cdots, j + (\nu - 1)p'$ $(j = 1, 2, \cdots, p')$, the matrix is unchanged. Hence (No. 141), C_p possesses a birational transformation S of order ν. The genus of the involution defined by a given point and its $(\nu - 1)$ transformed through the powers of S is easy to obtain. For if $\eta = e^{2\pi i/\nu}$, S multiplies by η^k the p' integrals

$$u_j + \eta^k u_{j+p'} + \cdots + \eta^{(\nu-1)k} u_{j+(\nu-1)p'} \qquad (j = 1, 2, \cdots, p').$$

Hence the multipliers of the multiplication defined by S on the Jacobi variety are composed of the powers of η, unity included, taken each p' times. There are then exactly p' integrals of the first kind maintained invariant by S,

which shows that p' is the required genus. Since the involution defined by T is of genus *zero*, no power of S can be a T^k. Let now (x, y) be any point of C_p, and (x', y') its transformed by S. This transformation permutes u_j with $u_{j+p'}$, whence at least three relations such as

$$(x - a_1)^{\gamma_1}(x - a_2)^{\gamma_2}\,dx = (x' - a_1)^{\gamma'_1}(x' - a_2)^{\gamma'_2}\,dx'.$$

If we divide two of them by each other we obtain a relation

$$(x - a_1)^{\delta_1}(x - a_2)^{\delta_2} = (x' - a_1)^{\delta'_1}(x' - a_2)^{\delta'_2},$$

the exponents being rational. From this follows that if x tends towards one of the critical points, x' must tend towards another.

Let us denote as before the critical points by A_1, A_2, A_3 and assume first that S maintains one of them, say A_1, invariant. Then the integer λ of No. 139 must be equal to *unity*, mod. q, and the curve is reducible to the form $y^q = x^\alpha(x^2 - a^2)$. It is therefore hyperelliptic. Let S' be its ordinary binary transformation. SS' maintains the (A)'s invariant, hence it is a T^k and therefore $S = T^k S'$, which is absurd for $T^k S'$ determines an involution of genus *zero* while S determines one of genus $p' > 0$.

We conclude then that S permutes cyclically the critical points, and that $\lambda^3 \equiv 1$, mod. q. C_p is therefore reducible to the curve

$$y^q = (x - 1)(x - \eta)^\lambda (x - \eta^2)^{\lambda^2}; \qquad \eta = e^{\frac{2\pi i}{3}}$$

of No. 139, the transformation S being of order *three*, with equations

$$x' = \eta x, \qquad y' = \eta^{\frac{1+\lambda+\lambda^2}{q}}\cdot y^\lambda.$$

This curve which we shall denote by $C_{3p'}$ exists only if $q - 1$ is divisible by three. When $q > 3$, the exponents $1, \lambda, \lambda^2$ are distinct and the curve is certainly not hyperelliptic.

Referring to Chapter II, § 3, we may affirm that the invariants of the Jacobi variety when $r = 1$ are given by

$$1 + h = 2(1 + k) = 2p = q - 1$$

unless we deal with $C_{3p'}$ when we have

$$1 + h = 2(1 + k) = 6p = 3(q - 1).$$

In this last case the period matrix is isomorphic to one of type

$$\begin{Vmatrix} \omega, & 0, & 0 \\ 0, & \omega, & 0 \\ 0, & 0, & \omega \end{Vmatrix},$$

where ω is pure and of genus $p' = p/3$.

146. The curve $C_{3p'}$ may be reduced to a particularly interesting form. For since $\frac{1}{3}(q-1)$ is an integer, q is decomposable in a unique manner in the domain $K(\sqrt{3})$, hence there are two relatively prime positive integers m, n, such that $q = m^2 - mn + n^2$. The curve represented in homogeneous coordinates by $x^m y^n + y^m z^n + z^m x^n = 0$ is invariant under the collineation group of order $3q$ generated by the two operations

$$x' = y, \qquad y' = z, \qquad z' = x;$$
$$x' = \epsilon^m x, \qquad y' = \epsilon^n y, \qquad z' = z.$$

Let γ, δ be two integers such that $m\gamma + n\delta = 1$. If we apply to $x^m y^n + x^n + y^m = 0$ the birational transformation

$$x = x'^{\delta} y'^{m}, \qquad y = x'^{-\gamma} y'^{n}$$

whose inverse is

$$x' = x^n y^{-m}, \qquad y' = x^{\gamma} y^{\delta}$$

we obtain

$$y'^q = -x'^{-\delta m - \gamma(m-n)} \cdot (1 + x').$$

To prove that this is the curve $C_{3p'}$ we observe first that

$$m^2 - mn + n^2 = q = q(m\gamma + n\delta),$$
$$\therefore \quad m(m - n - q\gamma) = -n(n - q\delta)$$

and since m and n are relatively prime, there is an integer t such that

$$m - n - q\gamma = tn, \qquad n - q\delta = -tm,$$

whence

$$\gamma = \frac{m - n(1+t)}{q}, \qquad \frac{\delta = n + tm}{q};$$
$$\therefore \quad -m\delta - \gamma(m-n) = -(1+t).$$

The three exponents α_i, corresponding to the curve obtained, can therefore be taken to be $1, t, -(1+t)$. Now $nt \equiv m - n$, mod. q,

$$\therefore \quad n(1 + t + t^2) \equiv m^2 - mn + n^2 \equiv 0, \text{ mod. } q.$$

But n may be assumed $< m$, and the relation which defines them shows that n^2 is less than q and therefore prime to it. It follows that $1 + t + t^2$ is divisible by q, or $t^3 \equiv 1$, mod. q, so that t is either the integer λ or λ^2, mod. q, for $t \equiv 1$, mod. q, would mean that either q is 3, or n^2 is divisible by q. The curve which we have obtained corresponds then to the three exponents $1, \lambda, \lambda^2$ and in the case $r = 1$, this suffices to establish that it is birationally equivalent to $C_{3p'}$.

The two simplest curves $C_{3p'}$ have been considered at length by Klein ($q = 7$), and Virgil Snyder ($q = 13$), under the form

$$x^3 y + y^3 z + z^3 x = 0$$
$$x^4 y + y^4 z + z^4 x = 0$$

and the invariants of their Jacobi variety have been directly computed by Scorza.*

147. The consideration of the Weierstrass points will be useful for the problem which will occupy us next. Let s_i^h be the value of the integer s_i of No. 136 for A_h. We find at once

$$s_i^1 + s_i^2 + s_i^3 = \left(\beta_1^i + \beta_2^i + \beta_3^i - n_i \frac{(\alpha_1 + \alpha_2 + \alpha_3)}{q}\right) q + 3q.$$

In expressing that u_i is finite at infinity we find that the first term at the right $< -q$, hence the left side is $< 2q$. But $\alpha_1 + \alpha_2 + \alpha_3$ is divisible by q. Hence this left side, which is positive, is a multiple of q, and therefore is exactly equal to q, that is $s_i^1 + s_i^2 + s_i^3 = q$. Hence, if m_h is the order of the point A_h,

$$\begin{aligned} m_1 + m_2 + m_3 &= \sum_{i=1}^{p} (s_i^1 + s_i^2 + s_i^3) - \frac{3p(p+1)}{2} \\ &= pq - \frac{3p(p+1)}{2} = \frac{p(p-1)}{2}. \end{aligned}$$

148. We have seen that for the curves other than $C_{3p'}$, $1 + h = q - 1 = 2p$. Hence (No. 142) the total group of these curves is the cyclic group of order q generated by T, except in the hyperelliptic case when it is of order $2q$. It remains to examine $C_{3p'}$. We propose to show that *when $q > 7$ the total group of $C_{3p'}$ is the group of order $3q$ generated by the cyclic operations T of order q and S of order* 3.

We have seen that $ST = T^\mu S$, where $\mu^3 \equiv 1$ but $\mu \not\equiv 1$, mod. q, and therefore the group generated by S, T, is indeed of order $3q$. Moreover either μ or μ^2 is the integer repeatedly denoted by λ. Since there are no relations $S^\alpha = T^\beta$, $S^i T^k$ $(i = 1, 2)$ is of order three (No. 140).

149. Let $\sum$ be a birational transformation of $C_{3p'}$ into itself, not an $S^i T^k$, and let ν be its order. It induces in the Jacobi variety one of equal order, $\sum'$, for when either one is the identity so is the other (No. 141). Hence among the multipliers of $\sum'$ is found at least one primitive ν-th root of unity. On the other hand these multipliers satisfy the characteristic equation, which is of degree $q - 1$, and as we know (No. 93), is reducible in $K(\epsilon)$, its left side becoming there the product of $2p'$ cubic factors.—Now the primitive ν-th roots satisfy an equation whose degree is the Euler function $\varphi(\nu)$, and which is irreducible in the rational domain. Hence the roots of this equation satisfy the characteristic equation as well, and $\varphi(\nu) \leqq q - 1$. $\therefore$ $\nu = q, 2q$, or else it is prime to q. But in this last case the equation in the ν-th primitive

* See Klein—Fricke, *Vorlesungen über elliptische Modulfunctionen*, vol. 1, p. 701; Snyder, American Journal of Mathematics, vol. 30, (1908); Scorza, Atti dell' Accademia Gioenia (1917).

roots is irreducible in $K(\epsilon)$ (Kronecker). Hence one of the cubic factors above has for roots all the primitive ν-th roots, whence then $\varphi(\nu) \leqq 3$, $\nu = 2, 3, 4, 6$. Thus finally ν can only have the values $2, 3, 4, 6, q, 2q$.

The case $\nu = 2q$ may be excluded at once for then the multipliers are necessarily the quantities $-\epsilon^{n_j}$ and $\sum'^{q}$ is the ordinary multiplication present only when the curve is hyperelliptic. There remain then only the possibilities $\nu = 2, 3, 4, 6$ or q. Through $\sum$ the points A_1, A_2, A_3 are transformed into new points A'_1, A'_2, A'_3, for by the discussion of No. 140 it is readily seen that $C_{3p'}$ possesses no other transformations than an $S^i\, T^k$ leaving the set of (A)'s invariant. These new points are coincidence points for the transformation of order q, $\sum T \sum^{-1}$. Let A^k_i be the transformed of A'_i by T^{k-1}, or of A_i by $T^{k-1} \sum$. The (A^k)'s are also coincidence points for a certain transformation of order q, and I say that an A^k can be neither an A^h nor an A. For otherwise $\sum^{-1} T^{k-h} \sum$ would transform an A into another, and therefore $\sum^{-1} T^{k-h} \sum = S^j\, T^k$. But if $j \neq 0$ this is impossible for the two transformations are of different orders q, and three, while if $j = 0$, it leads to $\sum T^k \sum^{-1} = T^{k-h}$, again impossible whether $k \neq h$, as the two substitutions have then different coincidence points, or still worse $k = h \neq 0$. Thus the existence of $\sum$ brings as a corollary that of $(q + 1)$ sets of three Weierstrass points. The sum of the orders of the (A^k)'s is obviously equal to the sum of the orders of the (A)'s, that is, to $p(p - 1)/2$. The sum of the orders of all the Weierstrass points thus obtained is $(q + 1)p(p - 1)/2 = p(p^2 - 1)$. But this is the sum of the orders of all the Weierstrass points (Hurwitz), hence $C_{3p'}$ can have no others. Thus the Weierstrass points are grouped in sets of three and any birational transformation $\sum$ merely permutes the sets among themselves. This follows from the fact that if $\sum$ permutes for example A_1 with A^1_1, A^1_1 is critical for a definite transformation of order q, $\sum T \sum^{-1}$, whose cyclic group is uniquely defined by A^1_1, and hence also the corresponding set of three coincidence points to which $\sum A_2$ and $\sum A_3$ necessarily belong. This set can only be A^1_1, A^1_2, A^1_3. Henceforth the set of (A^k)'s will be denoted by (A^k).

150. I say that S permutes at least two sets (A^k). For if it maintained them all fixed, ST would permute q of them cyclically which is impossible as its order is three. Assume then that S permutes (A^{k+1}) with some other set. The transformation $U = \sum^{-1} T^{-k} ST^k \sum$ which is of order three permutes cyclically (A) with two other sets, say (A^1), (A^2) in the order named. On the other hand the number of sets is $q + 1$ which is prime to three, hence S must maintain fixed at least one set other than (A), say (A^{h+1}). Then $T^{-h}\, ST^h$ is a transformation of order three maintaining invariant (A) and (A^1) and it may be assumed without inconvenience to be S itself. Finally if $V = UT$, we have $V(A) = UT(A) = (A^1)$, $V(A^1) = UT(A^1) = U(A^2)$

$= (A)$. It follows that V^2 maintains (A) invariant and can only be of order one, three, or q and V therefore of order $2, 3, 6$, or q since $2q$ is excluded. It is also obviously not of order 3 or q. Hence V is of order 2 or 6.

It is at once verified that the effect of V on the point A_1 is expressed by one of the relations

$$VSA_1 = SVA_1, \qquad VSA_1 = S^2 VA_1.$$

Hence either $VS = SVT^k$, or $VS = S^2 VT^k$. If $k \neq 0$ we must have one of the relations

$$V^{-1} S^{-1} VS = T^k, \qquad V^{-1} S^{-2} VS = T^k$$

which is impossible for T^k maintains (A) alone fixed, while the other substitutions maintain both (A) and (A') fixed. Thus, *if there is a transformation* $\sum$ *of* $C_{3p'}$, *not an* $S^i T^k$, *there is one* V *of order* 2 *or* 6, *such that* VT^{-1} *is of order* 3, *and that moreover either* $VS = SV$, *or* $VS = S^2 V$.

151. Let us examine now the effect of the birational transformations $S^i T^k$ on the integrals of the first kind. It is seen at once that they transform a linear combination $au_j + bu_{j+p'} + cu_{j+2p'}$ into one of the same type. We have there $3q$ birational transformations and if we range the integrals in suitable order, their transformations will be represented by arrays such as

$$\left\| \begin{array}{cccc} B_1, & 0, & \cdots, & 0 \\ 0, & B_2, & \cdots, & 0 \\ \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot \\ \cdot & \cdot & \cdots, & B_{p'} \end{array} \right\|$$

where B_j is itself an array of one of the three following types

$$\left\| \begin{array}{ccc} \epsilon^{n_j}, & 0, & 0 \\ 0, & \epsilon^{\lambda n_j}, & 0 \\ 0, & 0, & \epsilon^{\lambda^2 n_j} \end{array} \right\|, \quad \left\| \begin{array}{ccc} 0, & \epsilon^{n_j}, & 0 \\ 0, & 0, & \epsilon^{\lambda n_j} \\ \epsilon^{\lambda^2 n_j}, & 0, & 0 \end{array} \right\|, \quad \left\| \begin{array}{ccc} 0, & 0, & \epsilon^{n} \\ \epsilon^{\lambda n_j}, & 0, & 0 \\ 0, & \epsilon^{\lambda^2 n_j}, & 0 \end{array} \right\|,$$

corresponding to T^j, ST^j, $S^2 T^j$, respectively. The array of the (B)'s represents also a complex multiplication. Each set contains q multiplications of which $q - 1$ are independent and between the three sets of $q - 1$ independent multiplications thus obtained there are no linear relations. Since $1 + h = 3(q - 1)$, these multiplications form a base. Therefore any multiplication can be represented by an array such as that of the (B)'s with now any one of the (B)'s of the form

$$\left\| \begin{array}{ccc} g_1(\epsilon), & g_2(\epsilon), & g_3(\epsilon) \\ g_3(\epsilon^{\lambda}), & g_1(\epsilon^{\lambda}), & g_2(\epsilon^{\lambda}) \\ g_2(\epsilon^{\lambda^2}), & g_3(\epsilon^{\lambda^2}), & g_1(\epsilon^{\lambda^2}) \end{array} \right\|,$$

the (g)'s being polynomials with rational coefficients. For example, B_j is obtained when ϵ is replaced by ϵ^{n_j}.

152. Let us assume in particular that we are dealing with the complex multiplication defined by the birational transformation V of No. 150, and let us represent the typical B_j just written by

$$\begin{Vmatrix} a_1, & a_2, & a_3 \\ b_1, & b_2, & b_3 \\ c_1, & c_2, & c_3 \end{Vmatrix}.$$

If we express the fact that $VS = SV$ or $S^2 V$ we find that this array is necessarily of one of the two forms*

$$\begin{Vmatrix} a, & b, & c \\ c, & a, & b \\ b, & c, & a \end{Vmatrix}, \qquad \begin{Vmatrix} a, & b, & c \\ b, & c, & a \\ c, & a, & b \end{Vmatrix}.$$

Finally the multipliers are roots of one of the two equations

$$\begin{Vmatrix} a-x, & b, & c \\ c, & a-x, & b \\ b, & c, & a-x \end{Vmatrix} = 0, \qquad \begin{Vmatrix} a-x, & b, & c \\ b, & c-x, & a \\ c, & a, & b-x \end{Vmatrix} = 0.$$

153. What are these multipliers? *When V is of order two,* they can only be $+1$ and -1, taken one p' times and the other $2p'$ times in the set of p multipliers, or else -1 taken $3p'$ times. But this last case may be set aside as it presents itself only for hyperelliptic curves. Similarly I say that $+1$ cannot be taken $2p'$ times. For then V would leave invariant $2p'$ integrals of the first kind, hence it would determine an involution of order *two* and genus $2p'$ on $C_{3p'}$, involution which must have $2p - 2(2 \cdot 2p' - 2) = 2 - 2p' \geqq 0$ coincidences, which is impossible unless $p' = 1$, $q = 7$. Hence except for this last case when $C_{3p'}$ is Klein's quartic, if V is of order *two*, there are p' multipliers equal to $+1$, and $2p'$ equal to -1. The numbers a, b, c above are numbers of the domain $K(\epsilon)$, and when we replace ϵ by ϵ^k we do not change the roots of the equations at the end of No. 152, if they are rational or roots of unity of degree prime to q. Hence these equations will all have -1 for double root and $+1$ for simple root. The sum of these roots is -1 and their product $+1$.

154. *When V is of order* 6, the multipliers can only be $1, \eta^{\frac{1}{2}}, \eta^{-\frac{1}{2}}$, or -1, $\eta^{\frac{1}{2}}, \eta^{-\frac{1}{2}}$, taken each p' times $(\eta = e^{2\pi i/3})$. The first possibility can again be set aside, for then there would be on the curve an involution of order 6 and genus p', with $2p - 2 - 6(2p' - 2) = 10 - 6p'$ coincidences, which requires here also $p' = 1$, $q = 7$. The second and only possible set of multipliers are the distinct roots of $x^3 + 1 = 0$. Their sum is *zero* and their product -1.

* See Klein-Fricke, loc. cit. p. 704, for a similar computation corresponding to $q=7$, $p'=1$.

155. We can now show that to V there cannot correspond a type array

$$\begin{Vmatrix} a, & b, & c \\ c, & a, & b \\ b, & c, & a \end{Vmatrix}$$

for any B. For if $V^2 = 1$, the condition as to the sum of the multipliers gives at once $3a = -1$. On the other hand VT^{-1} must be of order three. But to this transformation corresponds an array of (B)'s of which a typical one is

$$\begin{Vmatrix} a\epsilon, & b\epsilon, & c\epsilon \\ c\epsilon^{\lambda}, & a\epsilon^{\lambda}, & b\epsilon^{\lambda} \\ b\epsilon^{\lambda^2}, & c\epsilon^{\lambda^2}, & a\epsilon^{\lambda^2} \end{Vmatrix}.$$

The corresponding multipliers which can only be $1, \eta, \eta^2$ are roots of

$$\begin{vmatrix} a\epsilon - x, & b\epsilon, & c\epsilon \\ c\epsilon^{\lambda}, & a\epsilon^{\lambda} - x, & b\epsilon^{\lambda} \\ b\epsilon^{\lambda^2}, & c\epsilon^{\lambda^2}, & a\epsilon^{\lambda^2} - x \end{vmatrix} = 0$$

$$\therefore \quad a(\epsilon + \epsilon^{\lambda} + \epsilon^{\lambda^2}) = 1 + \eta + \eta^2 = 0$$

and as $3a = -1$, we must have $\epsilon + \epsilon^{\lambda} + \epsilon^{\lambda^2} = 0$ which cannot be since q has been assumed > 3 and ϵ is a root of the irreducible equation

$$1 + x + x^2 + \cdots + x^{q-1} = 0.$$

If $V^6 = 1$, we must have first $3a = 0$. Hence the array corresponding to V is of the type

$$\begin{Vmatrix} 0, & b, & c \\ c, & 0, & b \\ b, & c, & 0 \end{Vmatrix}.$$

Its square

$$\begin{Vmatrix} 2bc, & c^2, & b^2 \\ b^2, & 2bc, & c^2 \\ c^2, & b^2, & 2bc \end{Vmatrix}$$

must be a matrix whose cube is unity. Hence again $6bc = 0$, and either b or $c = 0$. Assume for example $b = 0$. Expressing the fact that the multipliers of V have -1 for product we have $c^3 = -1$, hence $c = -1, \eta^{\frac{1}{2}}$ or $\eta^{-\frac{1}{2}}$. The values $\eta^{\pm\frac{1}{2}}$ are to be set aside for c must be a number of the domain $K(\epsilon)$ and cannot be a root of unity of degree prime to q. As to -1 it must be set aside for then VS would be a birational transformation with multipliers all -1, and $C_{3p'}$ would be hyperelliptic. Our affirmation is therefore proved.

156. Let us now consider the array

$$\begin{Vmatrix} a, & b, & c \\ b, & c, & a \\ c, & a, & b \end{Vmatrix}.$$

Assume first $V^6 = 1$. The sum of the multipliers is zero and their product -1, hence

$$a + b + c = 0, \qquad \begin{vmatrix} a, & b, & c \\ b, & c, & a \\ c, & a, & b \end{vmatrix} = -1$$

which cannot be since the determinant just written has $a + b + c$ for factor.

It remains to consider $V^2 = 1$. We have then $a + b + c = -2 + 1 = -1$. Moreover since the square of our array is the identical substitution we must have

$$bc + ca + ab = 0,$$
$$\therefore \quad a(-1 - a) + bc = 0, \qquad a = bc - a^2,$$

and similarly $b = ca - b^2$, $c = ab - c^2$. Finally since VT^{-1} is of order *three*, the roots of

$$\begin{vmatrix} a\epsilon - x, & b\epsilon, & c\epsilon \\ b\epsilon^{\lambda}, & c\epsilon^{\lambda} - x, & a\epsilon^{\lambda} \\ c\epsilon^{\lambda^2}, & a\epsilon^{\lambda^2}, & b\epsilon^{\lambda^2} - x \end{vmatrix} = 0$$

are $1, \eta, \eta^2$. Their sum and the sum of their double products must be zero, hence $a\epsilon + b\epsilon^{\lambda} + c\epsilon^{\lambda^2} = 0$,

$$\epsilon^{(1+\lambda)}(ac - b^2) + \epsilon^{(\lambda+\lambda^2)}(bc - a^2) + \epsilon^{(1+\lambda^2)}(ab - c^2) = 0.$$

By means of the relations above and since $1 + \lambda + \lambda^2 \equiv 0$, mod. q, this last equation reduces to $a\epsilon^{-1} + b\epsilon^{-\lambda} + c\epsilon^{-\lambda^2} = 0$, from which follows

$$\frac{a}{\epsilon^{\lambda-\lambda^2} - \epsilon^{\lambda^2-\lambda}} = \frac{b}{\epsilon^{1-\lambda} - \epsilon^{\lambda-1}} = \frac{c}{\epsilon^{\lambda^2-1} - \epsilon^{1-\lambda^2}}.$$

The denominators are double the imaginary parts of powers of ϵ not divisible by q, hence they are not zero. Substituting in $bc + ca + ab = 0$, we have:

$$\epsilon^{\lambda^2-\lambda} + \epsilon^{\lambda-\lambda^2} - (\epsilon^3 + \epsilon^{-3}) + \epsilon^{\lambda-1} + \epsilon^{1-\lambda} - (\epsilon^{3(1+\lambda)} + \epsilon^{-3(1+\lambda)})$$
$$+ \epsilon^{1-\lambda^2} + \epsilon^{-1+\lambda^2} - (\epsilon^{3(1+\lambda^2)} + \epsilon^{-3(1+\lambda^2)}) = 0.$$

If we compare the first exponent to the others mod. q, and remember the congruence satisfied by λ, we find that it cannot be equal to any of them unless $\lambda = -2$, $-4/5$ or $-1/5$, mod. q, and since $\lambda^3 \equiv 1$, mod. q, it is easily seen that q must divide one of the integers 9, $126 = 2\cdot 3^2\cdot 7$, $189 = 3^3\cdot 7$ and therefore must be 7. For $q > 7$ the equation which ϵ must satisfy is certainly not its irreducible equation since it has less than $q - 1$ terms, or has $q - 1$ terms perhaps for $q = 13$, but with coefficients certainly not all equal.

The only possibility is then $q = 7$, $p' = 1$, $p = 3$, when $C_{3p'}$ is Klein's quartic. The relation just obtained is identically verified and in fact this curve possesses as shown precisely by Klein a binary transformation such as V and its group is the classical G_{168} generated by S, T, and V. For further

details and in particular for the equations of the group the reader is referred to his work (loc. cit.). *This ends the proof of the theorem of No. 148.*

157. The properties of the curves whose discussion is now complete may be summarized thus: *The curves of minimum genus possessing a cyclic group of order q, odd prime, constitute a finite number of birationally distinct families. Their total group is the cyclic group of order q with the exception of:* (*a*) *A hyperelliptic family present, whatever q, and whose group is of order $2q$ cyclic.* (*b*) *A family present only when $q - 1$ is divisible by three whose group is of order $3q$, unless $q = 7$ when it is the classical G_{168}. The indices of the Jacobi variety are given by*

$$1 + h = 2(1 + k) = 2p = q - 1$$

and the variety is pure except in the case (*b*) *when*

$$1 + h = 2(1 + k) = 6p = 3(q - 1),$$

and the variety is impure.

Remark: The variety of rank q corresponding to the group of order q has no congruence of spaces for $q > 7$, or for $q = 7$ and Klein's quartic, as then the product of the multipliers is $+ 1$ and the Jacobi variety possesses a triple integral of the first kind (No. 127). For $q = 5$ the first variety is ruled as shown by Enriques and Severi. The only doubtful case is then that of the hyperelliptic curve present for $q = 7$.

§ 3. Curves with four critical points

158. Let us consider first two hypergeometric integrals

$$\int_g^h (x - a_1)^{b_1}(x - a_2)^{b_2}(x - y)^{b_3}\,dx,$$

$$\int_g^h (x - a_1)^{b'_1}(x - a_2)^{b'_2}(x - y)^{b'_3}\,dx.$$

We assume that they have a meaning whatever the limits g, h, which requires that

$$b_i > -1, \qquad b'_i > -1 \qquad (i = 1, 2, 3),$$
$$b_1 + b_2 + b_3 < -1, \qquad b'_1 + b'_2 + b'_3 < -1.$$

Let us denote by ω_1, ω'_1 the two integrals corresponding to $g = a_1$, $h = y$ and by ω_2, ω'_2 those corresponding to $g = a_2$, $h = y$. Can there exist a bilinear relation

$$\gamma_{11}\,\omega_1\,\omega'_1 + \gamma_{12}\,\omega_1\,\omega'_2 + \gamma_{21}\,\omega_2\,\omega'_1 + \gamma_{22}\,\omega_2\,\omega'_2 = 0,$$

where the (γ)'s are independent of y? To answer the question set first

$z = \omega_1/\omega_2$, $z' = \omega_1'/\omega_2'$. As is well known z satisfies Schwarz's differential equation*

$$\frac{2\dfrac{dz}{dy}\dfrac{d^3z}{dy^3} - 3\left(\dfrac{d^2z}{dy^2}\right)^2}{2\left(\dfrac{dz}{dy}\right)^2} = \frac{1-\lambda}{2(y-a_1)^2} + \frac{1-\mu}{2(y-a_2)^2} + \frac{\lambda+\mu-\nu-1}{2(y-a_1)(y-a_2)},$$

$$\lambda = (b_1 + b_3 + 1)^2, \qquad \mu = (b_1 + b_2 + 1)^2, \qquad \nu = (b_2 + b_3 + 1)^2.$$

If the bilinear relation in question exists, z', a linear fractional function of z, must satisfy the same differential equation, and therefore

$$(b_i + b_k + 1) = \pm (b_i' + b_k' + 1) \qquad (i \neq k;\ i, k = 1, 2, 3).$$

By considering the various combinations of signs we find the following four possible types of relations:

(a) $\qquad b_i = b_i' \qquad (i = 1, 2, 3),$

(b) $\qquad 1 + b_i = -b_i' \qquad (i = 1, 2, 3),$

(c) $\qquad 1 + b_i = -b_j', \qquad 1 + b_j = -b_i', \qquad -1 + b_k = b_1' + b_2' + b_3',$

in which case b_i, b_j, b_i', b_j' are > 0 and $b_k, b_k' < 0$.

(d) $\qquad b_i = b_j', \qquad b_j = b_i', \qquad -b_k' = b_1 + b_2 + b_3 + 2.$

The case (a) is to be rejected for then z would be a constant, and when any of the three sets of relations (b), (c) and (d) are satisfied the bilinear relation certainly exists as is known from the theory of Schwarz's differential equations. To calculate the coefficients we recall that according to Picard the group of the hypergeometric differential equation satisfied by ω_1, ω_2 possesses the two fundamental substitutions†

$$(\omega_1, \omega_2;\ \eta_1\omega_1, (\eta_1 - \eta_3)\omega_1 + \omega_2);$$
$$(\omega_1, \omega_2, \omega_1 + (\eta_2 - \eta_3^{-1})\omega_2, \eta_2\omega_2);$$
$$\eta_1 = e^{-2\pi i(b_1+b_3)}, \qquad \eta_2 = e^{2\pi i(b_2+b_3)}, \qquad \eta_3 = e^{-2\pi i b_3}.$$

By accenting all quantities we obtain similarly the group corresponding to ω_1', ω_2'. The bilinear relation whose existence is discussed must be invariant when corresponding substitutions are applied to the (ω)'s and the (ω')'s. This yields six equations of the first degree between the (γ)'s. It is found that they are sufficient to determine their ratios provided we have

$$\frac{(\eta_1 - \eta_3)(\eta_2 - \eta_3^{-1})}{(1-\eta_1)(1-\eta_2)} = \frac{(\eta_1' - \eta_3')(\eta_2' - \eta_3'^{-1})}{(1-\eta_1')(1-\eta_2')}.$$

*See Picard *Traité d'Analyse*, vol. 3, second edition, p. 333.

†Picard, loc. cit. p. 324.

This is at once verified for (*b*). As for (*c*) or (*d*) we have either

$$\eta_1' = \eta_1, \qquad \eta_2' = \eta_2, \qquad \eta_3' = \eta_1 \eta_2^{-1} \eta_3^{-1},$$

or

$$\eta_1' = \eta_2, \qquad \eta_2' = \eta_1, \qquad \eta_3' = \eta_1 \eta_2^{-1} \eta_3^{-1},$$

and by means of one or the other of these relations the equation of condition is readily verified, as was to be expected.

159. We are now ready to undertake the investigation of the curve C_p with four critical points. One of these being assumed for the present at infinity, the equation of the curve will be

$$y^q = (x - a_1)^{\alpha_1} (x - a_2)^{\alpha_2} (x - a_3)^{\alpha_3}$$

with the (α)'s positive and $< q$, their sum being prime to q. The genus is $p = q - 1$ and C_p depends upon a single modulus—the anharmonic ratio of the critical (x)'s. We shall assume this modulus arbitrary and propose to determine above all the invariants of the Jacobi variety and next the total group of our curves.

To n_j corresponds a number of integrals of the first kind given by

$$r_j = \left[n_j \frac{(\alpha_1 + \alpha_2 + \alpha_3)}{q} \right] - \left[\frac{n_j \alpha_1}{q} \right] - \left[\frac{n_j \alpha_2}{q} \right] - \left[\frac{n_j \alpha_3}{q} \right],$$

and they are of the form

$$\int (x - a_1)^{b_1^j} (x - a_2)^{b_2^j} (x - a_3)^{b_3^j} dx,$$

the (β)'s having the same meaning as previously. If $r_j = 1$ we shall take

$$b_i^j = \beta_i^j \frac{- n_j \alpha_i}{q} \qquad (i = 1, 2, 3),$$

while if $r_j = 2$ there will be another integral which we shall choose so that it differ from the first only in that $b_1^j = \beta_i^j - (1/q) n_j \alpha_i + 1$. We can of course choose two other analogous integrals by permuting $1, 2, 3$ but they are linear combinations of the two just considered. We recall that the period matrix Ω is composed with the arrays

$$\tau = \| \tau_{j1}, \tau_{j2} \|, \qquad \| 1, \epsilon^{n_j}, \cdots, \epsilon^{(q-2)n_j} \|, \qquad (j = 1, 2, \cdots, p),$$

where

$$\tau_{j\mu} = \int_{a_\mu}^{a_{\mu+1}} du_j .$$

160. Since Ω is a Riemann matrix there certainly exists an alternate bilinear form

(6) $$\sum_{\mu, \nu}^{1\ 2} \gamma_{\mu\nu} (\epsilon^{n_j}, \epsilon^{n_k}) x_\mu y_\nu$$

in the sense of Chapter II. The (γ)'s are such that

$$\gamma_{\mu\nu}(x, y) = -\gamma_{\nu\mu}(y, x);$$
$$\gamma_{\mu\nu}(\epsilon^{n_j}, \epsilon^{n_k}) = 0 \quad \text{if} \quad n_j + n_k \not\equiv 0, \quad \text{mod. } q.$$

The ratios τ_{j1}/τ_{j2} are certainly variable for otherwise our curves would all have the same period matrix and would not depend upon a variable modulus. It follows that the form (6) is unique.

Can there exist forms of any other type? Whether it is alternate or not assume that such a form leads to an actual relation between the periods of u_j and u_k, that is, that the quantities $\gamma_{\mu\nu}(\epsilon^{n_j}, \epsilon^{n_k})$ are not all zero. Then one of the sets of relations (*b*), (*c*), (*d*) of No. 158 must be satisfied. (*b*) leads to

$$n_j \alpha_i \equiv -n_h \alpha_i, \quad \text{mod. } q \qquad (i = 1, 2, 3, 4);$$
$$\therefore \quad n_j + n_h \equiv 0, \quad \text{mod. } q,$$

that is, the (γ)'s are all zero except when ϵ^{n_j} and ϵ^{n_k} are conjugate. The calculation of No. 158 shows that the bilinear relation existing must be unique and as in the case considered (6) already is one there can be no other.

The conditions (*c*) lead to, for example,

$$n_j \alpha_1 = -n_h \alpha_2, \qquad n_j \alpha_2 \equiv -n_h \alpha_1, \text{ mod. } q.$$
$$n_j \alpha_3 = -n_h(\alpha_1 + \alpha_2 + \alpha_3) \equiv n_h \alpha_4, \text{ mod. } q.$$

Hence mod. q, either

$$\alpha_1 \equiv \alpha_2, \qquad n_j \equiv -n_h,$$

or

$$\alpha_1 \equiv -\alpha_2, \qquad n_j \equiv n_h, \qquad \alpha_3 \equiv -\alpha_4.$$

In the first case we are in the same situation as before. In the second C_p is birationally equivalent to

$$(7) \qquad y^q = \frac{x - a_1}{x - a_2}\left(\frac{x - a_3}{x - a_4}\right)^{\alpha}, \qquad 0 < \alpha < q.$$

We can take $\alpha_1 = 1$, $\alpha_2 = q - 1$, $\alpha_3 = \alpha$, and find that

$$r_j = \left[\frac{n_j(q + \alpha)}{q}\right] - \left[\frac{n_j}{q}\right] - \left[\frac{n_j(q - 1)}{q}\right] - \left[\frac{n_j \alpha}{q}\right] = 1$$

which shows that for each value of n_j there is only one integral and a bilinear relation such as contemplated in the second case cannot exist. The discussion of conditions (d) is the same as for (c) and the answer negative as well. *Hence Ω possesses no other bilinear form than* (6).

161. To determine h, k we must find out if there are other curves than (7) for which $r_j = 1$ whatever j. We shall see that this is not the case.

If $r_j = 1$ whatever j, Ω is composed with arrays

$$\| \tau_{j1}, \tau_{j2} \|, \qquad \| 1, \epsilon^j, \epsilon^{2j}, \cdots, \epsilon^{(q-2)j} \| \qquad (j = 1, 2, \cdots, q-1 = p).$$

The calculation outlined in No. 158 leads to the relation

$$\tau_{q-j,\,2}\, \tau_{j1} - \epsilon^j\, \tau_{q-j,\,1}\, \tau_{j,\,2} = 0.$$

$$\therefore \quad \frac{\tau_{q-j,\,2}}{\tau_{q-j,\,1}} = \frac{\epsilon^j\, \tau_{j,\,2}}{\tau_{j,\,1}} = \epsilon^j \cdot \tau_j$$

and therefore Ω can be put in the following form, where only the j-th and $(q-j)$-th rows are written:

$$\Omega \equiv \left\| \begin{matrix} 1, & \epsilon^j, & \epsilon^{2j}, & \cdots, & \epsilon^{(q-2)j}; & \tau_j, & \epsilon^j\,\tau_j, & \cdots, & \tau_j\,\epsilon^{(q-2)j} \\ \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot \\ 1, & \epsilon^{-j}, & \epsilon^{-2j}, & \cdots, & \epsilon^{-(q-2)j}; & \tau_j\,\epsilon^j, & \tau_j, & \cdots, & \tau_j\,\epsilon^{-(q-3)j} \\ \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot \end{matrix} \right\| .$$

Denote respectively by δ_μ, $\overline{\delta_\mu}$, the cycles corresponding to the periods ϵ^μ, $\tau_1\,\epsilon^\mu$, in the first line, the indices being taken mod. q. If we apply to the integrals and the cycles the binary permutations

$$u'_j = u_{q-j} \qquad (j = 1, 2, \cdots, p)$$

$$\delta'_\mu \sim \delta_{-\mu}; \qquad \overline{\delta'_\mu} \sim \delta_{1-\mu} \qquad (\mu = 0, 1, 2, \cdots, q-1)$$

Ω is unchanged. Hence C_p possesses a corresponding binary transformation U whose genus is $\frac{1}{2}p$ for it maintains invariant the integrals $u_j + u_{q-j}$ and no others.

Let (x, y) be any point of C_p, (x', y') its transformed by U. The integrals of the first kind are all of the form

$$\int \frac{\prod^{(i)} (x - a_i)^{\gamma_i}\, dx}{y^n}.$$

By reasoning as in No. 145 we find therefore again that U merely permutes the critical points. The equations of U are of type (2) and it is not the ordinary transformation present in hyperelliptic curves since its genus is not zero. Besides U must permute every critical point for if it maintained two of them fixed, the anharmonic ratio of the (a)'s would not be variable as was assumed. If then U permutes A_1 with A_2 and A_3 with A_4, we must have (No. 138)

$$\frac{\alpha_2}{\alpha_1} \equiv \frac{\alpha_1}{\alpha_2}, \qquad \frac{\alpha_4}{\alpha_3} \equiv \frac{\alpha_3}{\alpha_4}, \quad \text{mod. } q$$

and as we may always take $\alpha_1 = 1$, it is seen at once that we fall back upon (7), as was to be proved.

In accordance then with Chapter II, *if there are four arbitrary critical points,*

the Jacobi variety is pure, its indices being given by

$$(1 + h) = 2(1 + k) = p = q - 1$$

unless we deal with (7) *when the variety is impure and*

$$1 + h = 2(q - 1) = 2p, \qquad 1 + k = 3(q - 1).$$

162. Let us investigate more closely the question of birational transformations. We know that if C_p is not of type (7) its total group is cyclic of order q (No. 142). It remains to consider the curves (7).

In the first place if $\alpha = 1$, the curve is hyperelliptic. The ordinary transformation then present shall be denoted by S, and the binary transformation of genus p', as before, by U. We propose to show that *in general C_p possesses no other transformations than S, T, U and the products of their powers.*

In the first place the birational transformations T^k, $T^k U$, define the two multiplications

$$u_j' = \epsilon^{kj} u_j, \qquad u_j' = \epsilon^{kj} u_{q-j} \qquad (j = 1, 2, \cdots, p),$$

and among those $2q$ multiplications exactly $2(q - 1) = 1 + h$ are linearly independent. If we write the integrals in suitable order the most general multiplications will be represented by an array

$$\left\| \begin{matrix} B_1, & 0, & \cdots, & 0 \\ 0, & B_2, & \cdots, & 0 \\ \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot \\ 0, & \cdot & \cdots, & B_{\frac{1}{2}p} \end{matrix} \right\| ; \qquad B_j = \left\| \begin{matrix} g(\epsilon^j), & h(\epsilon^j) \\ h(\epsilon^{-j}), & g(\epsilon^{-j}) \end{matrix} \right\|,$$

where g, h are polynomials with rational coefficients. The array B_j may be written more simply

$$\left\| \begin{matrix} g, & h \\ \bar{h}, & \bar{g} \end{matrix} \right\|.$$

We first remark that if C_p is hyperelliptic A_1 may be permuted with the three other (A)'s by one of the three transformations S, U, $SU = US$, while if C_p is not hyperelliptic, A may be permuted with only one of these points, and that by means of U. But as a matter of fact the two cases, hyperelliptic and the other, need not be separated in the discussion.

163. Let us now assume that there exists a transformation V of C_p not a product of powers of those already known. The binary transformation $W = V^{-1} U \cdot V$ may or may not permute the (A)'s among themselves. We propose to show that in both cases we are led to an impossibility.

To begin with if W permutes the (A)'s merely among themselves it must belong to one of the three types UT^k, ST^k, UST^k. But if $T^k \neq 1$, these transformations are of order $2q$ at least as seen by a reference to their complex multiplications. Hence necessarily $T^k = 1$, and $UV = VU$, VS or VUS.

If V corresponds to the array of the (B)'s, we obtain by comparison of the arrays for UV with those of the other three substitutions, one of the systems of relations

$$\begin{array}{lll} (a) & g = \bar{g}, & h = \bar{h}, \\ (b) & g = -\bar{h}, & \\ (c) & g = -\bar{g}, & h = -\bar{h}. \end{array}$$

The equation in the multipliers of V is

$$\begin{vmatrix} g - x, & h \\ \bar{h}, & \bar{g} - x \end{vmatrix} = 0.$$

This equation must be reducible in $K(\epsilon)$, whence, as in Nos. 149, 151, the only possible systems of multipliers $(1, -1)$, (η, η^{-1}), $(i, -i)$, $(\eta^{\frac{1}{2}}, \eta^{-\frac{1}{2}})$, $(\epsilon^k, \epsilon^{-k})$, $(-\epsilon^k, -\epsilon^{-k})$, corresponding to the orders $\nu = 2, 3, 4, 6, q, 2q$ for V.

164. In the case of relations (a), g and h are real and the equation in the multipliers is $x^2 - 2gx + g^2 - h^2 = 0$. Let x_1, x_2 be its roots. When $x_1 = 1$, $x_2 = -1$, we have $g = 0$, $h = \pm 1$, hence $V = U$ or SU.* In the other cases h takes the values $\pm i$, $\pm \frac{i\sqrt{3}}{2}$, $\pm \frac{(\epsilon^k - \epsilon^{-k})}{2}$, all imaginary whereas h must be real.

In the case of relations (b) the equation in the multipliers is

$$x^2 - (g + \bar{g})x = 0$$

and must be rejected since no multipliers can be zero.

Finally in the case of relations (c), the equation is $x^2 + h^2 = 0$. Since h is purely imaginary, $h^2 = x_1 x_2$ is a negative real number, and therefore necessarily $x_1 = 1$, $x_2 = -1$, $h = \pm i$. But h is a number of the domain $K(\epsilon)$, and therefore cannot be a root of unity of degree prime to q. Hence V cannot correspond to any relations such as those just discussed.

165. Let us assume now that the binary transformation W of No. 163 permutes the (A)'s with points of another similar set. The multipliers of W must be $1, -1$, since it is not S, and if it corresponds to the array of (B)'s, we must have $g + \bar{g} = 0$. g is therefore purely imaginary. If we set $\epsilon^k + \epsilon^{-k} = \eta_k$, $\epsilon^k - \epsilon^{-k} = \zeta_k$, the (η)'s are real and the (ζ)'s pure imaginary, hence

$$g = \sum_{i=1}^{\frac{q-1}{2}} a_i \zeta_i \qquad (a_i \text{ rational number}).$$

To TW corresponds an array of (B)'s with $g\epsilon$ in place of g. More exactly, to

* For by the remark at the end of No. 141 it is sufficient to show that to $V^{-1}U$ or $V^{-1}SU$ correspond ordinary transformations of the Jacobi variety, and this is readily done.

the B_j of this array corresponds $g(\epsilon^j)\cdot\epsilon^j$, but if ϵ designates a suitably chosen q-th root of unity, any one of these numbers can be set in the form $g\epsilon$. Now if we set $\eta_0 = 2$, it is at once verified that the real part of $\zeta_i\,\epsilon = \frac{1}{2}\zeta_i(\eta_1 + \zeta_1)$ is equal to $\frac{1}{2}\zeta_i\,\zeta_1 = \frac{1}{2}(\eta_{i+1} - \eta_{i-1})$. Hence the double of the real part of $g\epsilon$, or

$$g\epsilon + \bar{g}\epsilon^{-1} = \sum_{i=1}^{\frac{q-1}{2}} a_i(\eta_{i+1} - \eta_{i-1}).$$

Finally since $\eta_j = \eta_{q-j}$, we can write

$$g\epsilon + \bar{g}\epsilon^{-1} = \sum_{i=1}^{\frac{q-1}{2}} a'_i(\eta_{2i} - \eta_{2(i-1)}),$$

where the (a')'s are merely the (a)'s written in different order. If we write the equation in the multipliers of TW we see at once that this expression can only have the values $0, \pm 1, \pm(\epsilon^k + \epsilon^{-k})$.

In the first case the (a')'s and therefore the (a)'s must all be zero. The second leads to

$$a'_1 = \pm \tfrac{1}{2}, \qquad a'_1 = a'_2 = \cdots = a'_{\frac{q-1}{2}},$$

hence $g\epsilon + \bar{g}\epsilon^{-1} = \pm \frac{1}{2}\eta_{\frac{q-1}{2}} \pm 1 \neq \pm 1$, and therefore cannot occur at all. In the third case we have, s being a suitable integer between 0 and $q-1$, $g\epsilon + \bar{g}\epsilon^{-1} = \pm\eta_{2s}$;

$$\therefore\ a'_s - a'_{s+1} = \pm 1, \qquad a'_i = a'_s, \qquad i < s; \qquad a'_{s+i} = a'_{s+1}.$$

Hence then $g\epsilon + \bar{g}\epsilon^{-1} = -2a'_s \pm \eta_{2s} + 2a'_{s+1}\,\eta_{q-1}$ which can only be if $a'_{s+1} = a'_s = 0$ and we have here again a contradiction.

The only possibility is then $g = 0$. But in this case UW corresponds to a multiplication of type $u'_j = \lambda_j\,u_j$, where u_j is the integral which T multiplies by ϵ^j. This multiplication is permutable with T, cyclic, and therefore, by a previous remark, $W = US^i\,T^k$ or UT^k and hence must permute the (A)'s among themselves, contrary to the assumptions made.

This completes the proof of the non existence of any transformations of C_p other than those belonging to the group generated by S, T and U.

166. It is at once verified that $T^k\,U = UT^{-k}$, hence every substitution of the group is of the form $S^i\,U^j\,T^k$ if C_p is hyperelliptic, or $U^j\,T^k$ if it is not. Hence *if C_p is not hyperelliptic, that is, if the integer α in* (7) *is* > 1, *the group is of order* $2q$, *while if the curve is hyperlliptic the order is* $4q$.

Observe that the curve can be reduced to the form

$$y^q = \left(\frac{x-a}{ax-1}\right)\left(\frac{x+a}{ax+1}\right)^{\alpha},$$

the equations of U being then $x' = -x$, $y' = y^{-1}$. For $\alpha = 1$ we have, besides, S, whose equations are $x' = -x$, $y' = y$. The parameter a may be taken as modulus of the curve.

Remark: For particular values of the modulus of which the curves with four critical points depend, there will be other birational transformations different from those considered. For example

$$y^q = (x-1)(x-\eta)(x-\eta^2), \qquad \eta = e^{\frac{2\pi i}{3}},$$

possesses an obvious cyclic transformation of order three.

§ 4. Curves with $r + 2 > 4$ critical points.

167. We shall take the equation in the form

$$y^q = \prod_{i=1}^{r+1} (x - a_i)^{\alpha_i}, \tag{8}$$

the (α)'s of index $< r + 2$ and their sum being prime to q, with a_{r+2} at infinity.

We may choose for the r_j integrals of the first kind corresponding to n_j, the set

$$\int \frac{(x-a_1)^{\gamma_j} \prod^{(i)} (x-a_i)^{\beta_i^j}\, dx}{y^{n_j}} \qquad (\gamma_j = 1, 2, \cdots, r_j).$$

Now the sums $\alpha_i + \alpha_j$ cannot all be divisible by q. For then if r is odd, $\sum_{i=1}^{r+1} \alpha_i$ would be divisible by q, while if r is even

$$2 \sum \alpha_i = \alpha_1 + \alpha_2 + \sum_{i=2}^{r+1} \alpha_i + (\alpha_1 + \sum_{i=3}^{r+1} \alpha_i)$$

would be also, leading again to the divisibility of the same sum by q.

Let us observe that since $r > 2$ we may arrange matters so that there will be at least three sums $\alpha_\mu + \alpha_{\mu+1}$ not divisible by q. For the worst conditions obtained are when:

(a) $r = 3$ and we have a set of five exponents corresponding to the five critical points, such as: $\alpha, -\alpha, \alpha, \alpha', \alpha''$. Then $\alpha + \alpha' + \alpha'' \equiv 0$, mod. q, and neither α' nor α'' are $\equiv -\alpha$. One of them however may be $\equiv \alpha$. In this case the exponents in suitable order form a set such as $\alpha, \alpha, \alpha, \alpha'$, $-\alpha$, and the sums 2α, 2α, $\alpha + \alpha'$ are not divisible by q.

(b) $r = 4$ and the set of exponents is $\alpha, -\alpha, \alpha, -\alpha, \alpha - \alpha$. In another order they form the set $\alpha, \alpha, \alpha, -\alpha, -\alpha, -\alpha$, for which the assertion is at once verified.

Let then $\alpha_1 + \alpha_2 \not\equiv 0$, mod. q, and make a_1 tend towards a_2. Some of the integrals of the first kind will preserve their character for the curve $C_{p'}$ limit

of C_p, where $p' = \frac{1}{2}(r-1)(q-1)$. I say that the integrals of the first kind corresponding to n_j for $C_{p'}$ will be linearly dependent upon these. For the limiting integrals which preserve their character form the set

$$\int (x-a_1)^{b'_1} \prod_{i=3}^{r+1} (x-a_i)^{b_i}\, dx,$$

where the (b)'s have the same value as above, and

$$b'_1 = \frac{n_j(\alpha_1+\alpha_2)}{q} - \left[\frac{n_j(\alpha_1+\alpha_2)}{q}\right] + \gamma.$$

We must determine the range of the positive integer γ. Recalling that

$$\beta^j_i = \frac{-n_j\,\alpha_i}{q} + \left[\frac{n_j\,\alpha_i}{q}\right] < 0$$

we see that if the integer $[-\beta^j_1 - \beta^j_2]$, which < 2, is equal to unity, we must take $\gamma \geqq 1$, while if $[-\beta^j_1 - \beta^j_2] = 0$ we must have only $\gamma \geqq 0$. On the other hand the upper limit of γ is r'_j corresponding to r_j for C_p. But $r'_j = r_j - [-\beta^j_1 - \beta^j_2]$, and hence in all cases γ takes r_j consecutive values. As the limiting integrals are obviously independent our assertion is proved.

168. I say that if the array τ possesses the bilinear form

$$\sum \gamma_{\mu\nu}(\epsilon^{n_j}, \epsilon^{n_k})\, x_\mu\, y_\nu$$

then the coefficients $\gamma_{\mu\nu}$ vanish when ϵ^{n_j}, ϵ^{n_k} are not conjugate, that is when $n_j + n_k \not\equiv 0$, mod. q. Since this has been proved for $r = 2$, we may assume it correct for a curve with less than $r+2$ critical points, then prove it for a curve with that number of critical points.

Assume then first that the theorem is untrue. If the (γ)'s are not zero for a particular pair of exponents n_j, n_k not congruent mod. q, they are not zero for any pair n, cn, where $c \equiv n_k/n_j$, mod. q, and hence if we replace in $\sum \gamma_{\mu\nu}(\epsilon^n, \epsilon^{cn})\, x_\mu\, y_\nu$ the (x)'s by the elements of a row of τ corresponding to ϵ^n and the (y)'s by the elements of a row corresponding to ϵ^{cn}, then the form vanishes identically. Let us assume that there is at least one case where the corresponding integers r_j, r_k are both > 1—for example let this be so for n_j, n_k themselves. The critical points being ranged in proper order there will be three distinct sums $\alpha_\mu + \alpha_{\mu+1}$, $\alpha_{\mu'} + \alpha_{\mu'+1}$, $\alpha_{\mu''} + \alpha_{\mu''+1}$, not divisible by q. If a_μ is made to tend towards $a_{\mu+1}$ there will be two integrals of the first kind corresponding to n_j and n_k preserving their character for the limiting curve $C_{p'}$. Let $\tau_{j\nu}$, $\tau_{k\rho}$ $(\nu, \rho = 1, 2, \cdots, r)$ be the corresponding elements of the array τ. We have then $\sum \gamma_{\nu\rho}(\epsilon^{n_j}, \epsilon^{n_k})\, \tau_{j\nu}\, \tau_{k\rho} = 0$. Passing to the limit, $\tau_{j\nu}$, $\tau_{k\rho}$ become similar periods of the limiting integrals, say

$\tau'_{j\nu}$, $\tau'_{k\rho}$, except that $\tau'_{j\mu} = \tau'_{k\mu} = 0$. Hence then

$$\sum_{\nu, \rho \neq \mu} \gamma_{\nu\rho}(\epsilon^{n_j}, \epsilon^{n_k}) \tau'_{j\nu} \tau'_{k\rho} = 0,$$

and there will be such a relation for every pair of integrals of $C_{p'}$ corresponding to n_j, n_k, and even more generally to cn_j, cn_k. According to the assumptions we have therefore

$$\gamma_{\nu\rho}(\epsilon^{n_j}, \epsilon^{n_k}) = 0 \qquad (\nu, \rho \neq \mu.)$$

If we reason similarly when μ is replaced first by μ', then by μ'', we find successively

$$\gamma_{\mu\rho}(\epsilon^{n_j}, \epsilon^{n_k}) = \gamma_{\rho\mu}(\epsilon^{n_j}, \epsilon^{n_k}) = 0, \qquad \rho \neq \mu';$$
$$\gamma_{\mu\mu'}(\epsilon^{n_j}, \epsilon^{n_k}) = \gamma_{\mu'\mu}(\epsilon^{n_j}, \epsilon^{n_k}) = 0,$$

which completes the proof in the case considered.

169. The above may cease to apply: (*a*) When the integers r_j corresponding to the sequence of exponents $l, cl, c^2 l, c^3 l, \cdots$, are alternately $+1$ and $r-1$, and the limiting curve $C_{p'}$ possesses no integrals corresponding to the exponents for which $r = 1$. But in this case the numbers r_j corresponding to $C_{p'}$ are all $r-1$ which is impossible if $r > 2$. The proof can therefore still be applied as between integrals corresponding to two exponents $c^s l$, $c^{s+1} l$, leading to $\gamma_{\mu\nu}(\epsilon^{c^s l}, \epsilon^{c^{s+1} l}) = 0$. But since the (γ)'s are polynomials with rational coefficients, it follows that $\gamma_{\mu\nu}(\epsilon^{n_j}, \epsilon^{cn_j}) = \gamma_{\mu\nu}(\epsilon^{n_j}, \epsilon^{n_k}) = 0$. (*b*) When $n_j = n_k$, $r = 3$. In this case we are not certain that to a bilinear relation between the periods of C_p corresponds after passing to the limit a similar one for $C_{p'}$, at least if all the numbers r_j of this last curve are equal to unity. Generally speaking let $\tau'_{j1}, \tau'_{j2}, \tau'_{j3}$ and $\tau''_{j1}, \tau''_{j2}, \tau''_{j3}$ be two lines of τ corresponding to n_j. By assumption then $\sum \gamma_{\mu\nu}(\epsilon^{n_j}, \epsilon^{n_j}) \tau'_{j\mu} \tau''_{j\nu} = 0$ with the relations $\gamma_{\mu\nu}(\epsilon, \epsilon) = -\gamma_{\nu\mu}(\epsilon, \epsilon)$, for otherwise there would exist a bilinear relation between the elements of every row of τ, the impossibility of which may be established as in No. 168. We have then in

$$\sum \gamma_{\mu\nu}(\epsilon^{n_j}, \epsilon^{n_j}) x_\mu y_\nu = 0$$

the equation of a plane "line complex."—We recall that in a space of an even number of dimensions linear complexes are degenerate. Hence there must exist a unique point (τ_1, τ_2, τ_3) of the plane, conjugate of both $(\tau'_1, \tau'_2, \tau'_3)$ and $(\tau''_1, \tau''_2, \tau''_3)$, relatively to the above complex. On the other hand when the moduli of C_p vary these points remain conjugate with respect to the same complex. But when the (a)'s describe closed paths the (τ')'s and (τ'')'s are transformed by a certain discontinuous projective group whose fundamental operations have been given by Picard.* Since the point (τ_1, τ_2, τ_3) is unique it must be maintained invariant by this group. However a glance at

*Annales de l' École Normale (1885).

the equation of its operations show that they leave no point invariant. We have therefore an impossibility, hence $\gamma_{\mu\nu}(\epsilon^{n_j}, \epsilon^{n_j}) = 0$.

170. It follows that *for the curves with more than four critical points in general position the period matrix possesses a minimum number of bilinear forms and consequently for the Jacobi variety* $1 + h = 2(1 + k) = q - 1$.

171. CONCLUSION. Our whole discussion may be summarized thus: The curves possessing a cyclic group of order q odd prime, of genus zero, with arbitrary coincidence points, do not possess in general any other birational transformations and their Jacobi varieties are pure with

$$1 + h = 2(1 + k) = q - 1.$$

Exception must be made for the curves birationally equivalent to the following:

$$\text{(I)} \qquad y^q = x^2 - a^2.$$

The group is then of order $2q$, cyclic, the rest being as in the general case.

$$\text{(II)} \qquad y^q = (x-1)(x-\eta)^\lambda(x-\eta^2)^{\lambda^2}$$

$$\left(\frac{q-1}{3}\ \text{integer}; \quad \eta = e^{\frac{2\pi i}{3}}; \quad \lambda^3 \equiv 1 \bmod. q\right).$$

The group is of order $3q$ if $q > 7$, of order 168 if $q = 7$ (curve reducible to Klein's quartic). The Jacobi variety is impure with

$$1 + h = 2(1 + k) = 6p = 3(q - 1).$$

$$\text{(III)} \qquad y^q = \frac{(x-a)}{(ax-1)}\left(\frac{x+a}{ax+1}\right)^\alpha.$$

The order of the group is $2q$ if $\alpha^2 \not\equiv 1$, mod. q, $4q$ in the opposite case. The Jacobi variety is impure with

$$1 + h = 2(q - 1), \qquad 1 + k = 3/2(q - 1).$$

UNIVERSITY OF KANSAS,
LAWRENCE, KANSAS.

ON RESTRICTED SYSTEMS OF HIGHER INDETERMINATE EQUATIONS *

BY

E. T. BELL

By two examples we shall illustrate a means for deriving arithmetical properties of certain restricted forms. So little being known concerning the arithmetic of forms of higher degree, it is reasonable to develop what is offered by analysis. The method exemplified is of wide scope and easy applicability, and may possibly, in addition to giving new properties of integers, yield also, on starting from the appropriate associated forms of the second degree, information regarding current problems. It is a natural extension to forms of higher degree of the classic applications of elliptic functions to special quadratic forms. The method being new, we shall give the analysis for the first example in some detail.

1. We take first a single restricted form

$$uy^s + vx^r - x^r y^s \tag{1}$$

in which u, v, x, y are variable integers; u, v are odd, x, y even, and r, s are constant odd positive integers. For $\alpha \geqq 1$ and m odd and positive, we consider all the representations (u, v, x, y) of $2^\alpha m$ in (1); or, what is the same, the totality of solutions (u, v, x, y) of

$$2^\alpha m = uy^s + vx^r - x^r y^s, \tag{2}$$

where α, m, r, s are constants, m, u, v, r, s are odd, x, y even, and $\alpha \geqq 1$. From all the (u, v, x, y) we select two classes C_1, C_2 defined by

$$(C_1): \quad x \gtreqless 0, \quad y > 0, \quad u > x^r, \quad v < y^s,$$
$$(C_2): \quad x > 0, \quad y \gtreqless 0, \quad u < x^r, \quad v > y^s;$$

and denote by $N_i(2^\alpha m)$ the number of (u, v, x, y) belonging to C_i. It will be shown that the difference $N_1(2^\alpha m) - N_2(2^\alpha m)$ is a function of α, r, s and the divisors of m.

2. It is convenient to distinguish four cases:

$$(A_1): \quad \alpha \equiv 0 \bmod r \quad \text{and} \quad \alpha \equiv 0 \bmod s,$$
$$(A_2): \quad \alpha \equiv 0 \bmod r \quad \text{and} \quad \alpha \not\equiv 0 \bmod s,$$
$$(A_3): \quad \alpha \not\equiv 0 \bmod r \quad \text{and} \quad \alpha \equiv 0 \bmod s,$$
$$(A_4): \quad \alpha \not\equiv 0 \bmod r \quad \text{and} \quad \alpha \not\equiv 0 \bmod s.$$

* Presented to the Society, October, 1920.

Let $\lambda_j(n)$ denote the sum of all those divisors of the positive integer n which are jth powers. Then, corresponding to the four cases we have:

$$(A_1'):\qquad N_1(2^\alpha m) - N_2(2^\alpha m) = 2^{\alpha-1}[\lambda_s(m) - \lambda_r(m)],$$
$$(A_2'):\qquad N_1(2^\alpha m) - N_2(2^\alpha m) = -2^{\alpha-1}\lambda_r(m),$$
$$(A_3'):\qquad N_1(2^\alpha m) - N_2(2^\alpha m) = 2^{\alpha-1}\lambda_s(m),$$
$$(A_4'):\qquad N_1(2^\alpha m) - N_2(2^\alpha m) = 0,$$

all of which may be put in a single statement. To prove these results we transform (1) into an associated quadratic form, simultaneously replacing the conditions (C_1), (C_2) by equivalent restrictions on the new variables.

3. The (u, v, x, y) being as in § 1, we see that d', δ', d'', δ'' defined by

$$(3)\qquad u = d', \qquad v = \delta', \qquad u - x^r = d'', \qquad y^s - v = \delta'',$$

are odd positive integers provided that (u, v, x, y) belongs to C_1. Let (u, v, x, y) belong to C_1. Then, since

$$uy^s + vx^r - x^r y^s = uv + (u - x^r)(y^s - v),$$

we may replace (2) by

$$(4)\qquad 2^\alpha m = d'\delta' + d''\delta'',$$

in which d', δ', d'', δ'' are restricted to be odd positive integers subject to the conditions

$$(5)\qquad d' - d'' = x^r, \qquad \delta' + \delta'' = y^s, \qquad x \gtreqless 0,$$

and, necessarily, $y > 0$. It is easily seen that all those solutions of (2) belonging to C_1 are identical with all those of (4) which satisfy also (5). That is, (2) and (C_1) define the same (u, v, x, y) as do (4) and (5). Hence $N_1(2^\alpha m)$ is equal to the number of solutions $(d', \delta', d'', \delta'')$ of (4) such that $d' - d''$ is the rth power of an integer $\gtreqless 0$, and $\delta' + \delta''$ the sth power of an integer > 0, the d', δ', d'', δ'' being odd positive integers as defined.

Similarly, starting from

$$u = d', \qquad v = \delta', \qquad x^r - u = d'', \qquad v - y^s = \delta'',$$

where d', δ', d'', δ'' are odd positive integers, and (u, v, x, y) belongs to C_2, we see that all the solutions of (2) belonging to C_2 are identical with all those of (4) which satisfy also

$$d' + d'' = x^r, \qquad \delta' - \delta'' = y^s, \qquad x > 0, \qquad y \gtreqless 0;$$

that is, $N_2(2^\alpha m)$ is equal to the number of solutions $(d', \delta', d'', \delta'')$ of (4) which are such that $d' + d''$ is the rth power of an integer > 0, and $\delta' - \delta''$ the sth power of an integer $\gtreqless 0$.

4. To evaluate $N_i(2^\alpha m)$ from this reduction to an associated quadratic form, we remark that if n is the kth power (k an integer) of an integer, $-n$ is also the kth power of an integer when and only when k is odd. Hence if $\varphi_{2t-1}(x)$ denotes 1 or 0 according as x is or is not the $(2t-1)$th power of an integer, $\varphi_{2t-1}(x)$ is an even function of x, viz.,

$$\varphi_{2t-1}(x) = \varphi_{2t-1}(-x).$$

Again, if x, y are relatively prime,

$$\varphi_{2t-1}(xy) = \varphi_{2t-1}(x)\,\varphi_{2t-1}(y);$$

and if $x, y, z, \cdots$ are integers, $r, s, t, \cdots$ odd positive integers, the value of

$$\varphi_{r,s,t,\ldots}(x, y, z, \cdots), \equiv \varphi_r(x)\,\varphi_s(y)\,\varphi_t(z)\cdots$$

is unity when and only when simultaneously x is an rth power, y is an sth power, z is a tth power, $\cdots$, and in every other case the function vanishes. That is, this function is even in each of its variables $x, y, z, \cdots$, and vanishes with each of $\varphi_r, \varphi_s, \varphi_t, \ldots$.

5. Using the values of $N_i(2^\alpha m)$ deduced in § 3 from the associate (4), we have now

$$N_1(2^\alpha m) = \sum \varphi_{r,s}(d' - d'', \delta' + \delta''),$$
$$N_2(2^\alpha m) = \sum \varphi_{r,s}(d' + d'', \delta' - \delta''),$$

the $\sum$ extending to all the $d', \delta', d'', \delta''$ given by (4) as defined in § 3. Let $f(x, y)$ denote any function which is even in each of its variables x, y. Then, the $\sum$ on the left being as just stated, that on the right extending to all positive divisors d of m, there is the well-known result due to Liouville:

$$\sum [f(d' - d'', \delta' + \delta'') - f(d' + d'', \delta' - \delta'')] \\ = 2^{\alpha-1} \sum d\,[f(0, 2^\alpha d) - f(2^\alpha d, 0)].$$

Hence, substituting $\varphi_{r,s}(x, y)$ for $f(x, y)$, we have

(6) $N_1(2^\alpha m) - N_2(2^\alpha m) = 2^{\alpha-1} \sum d\,[\varphi_{r,s}(0, 2^\alpha d) - \varphi_{r,s}(2^\alpha d, 0)]$;

and since d is odd,

$$\varphi_r(2^\alpha d) = \varphi_r(2^\alpha)\,\varphi_r(d), \qquad \varphi_s(2^\alpha d) = \varphi_s(2^\alpha)\,\varphi_s(d),$$

so that (6) is equivalent to $(A_1'), \cdots, (A_4')$ of § 2.

6. In deriving such results the order of the steps is the reverse of that just completed. It will be sufficiently evident from the following example. The function $f(x, y)$ is as in § 5, and all the letters, unless otherwise noted, represent positive integers. The origin of the fundamental f-identity is indicated in § 8.

Consider the pair of equations

$$(7)\qquad \begin{cases} 2n = 2n_1 + 2n_2, & n_1 = t_1\tau_1, \quad n_2 = t_2\tau_2, \\ 2n = m_1' + m_2', & m_1' = t_1'\tau_1', \quad m_2' = t_2'\tau_2', \end{cases}$$

in which the t, τ are pairs of conjugate divisors, as indicated, and the t's are divisors whose conjugates are odd; n_1, n_2 are odd or even, m_1', m_2' are odd. Hence t_1', τ_1', t_2', τ_2' are odd, as also are τ_1, τ_2; and $t_i\,(i = 1, 2)$ is odd or even according as n_i is odd or even, that is, t_i and n_i are of the same parity. Then, the $\sum$ on the left referring to all t, τ, m_2' which satisfy (7) for n given, that on the right to all pairs of conjugate divisors t, τ of $n\ (= t\tau)$, we have

$$\begin{aligned} &\sum [(-1)^{t_2}\{f(2t_2 + \tau_1, \tau_2) - f(2t_2 - \tau_1, \tau_2)\} \\ &\qquad - (-1)^{t_1}\{f(\tau_2, 2t_2 + \tau_1) - f(\tau_2, 2t_2 - \tau_1)\}] \\ &\qquad + 2\sum (-1|\tau_1')\xi(m_2')f(t_1', \tau_1') \\ &\qquad\qquad = \sum [\sum_{h=1}^{t} \{f(2h-1, \tau) - (-1)^n f(\tau, 2h-1)\}], \end{aligned}$$

where $(-1|\tau_1')$ is Jacobi's extension of Legendre's symbol, and $\xi(m_2')$ one fourth the number of representations of m_2' as a sum of two squares. This identity indicates, on replacing $f(x, y)$ by $\varphi_{r,s}(x, y)$, the substitutions for transformng (7) into four higher forms, also what restrictions are to be imposed on the latter.

7. For this purpose we consider the first partial sum on the left (after replacing f by φ),

$$\sum (-1)^{t_2}\varphi_{r,s}(2t_2 + \tau_1, \tau_2).$$

Here the φ-function $= 1$ when and only when integers x, y exist such that

$$2t_2 + \tau_1 = x^r, \qquad \tau_2 = y^s.$$

In every other case the value is zero. Hence we replace the first of the equations (7) by

$$(8)\qquad 2n = 2vx^r + 2uy^s - 4uv,$$

the substitution converting it into (8) being

$$t_2 = u, \qquad \tau_1 = x^r - 2u, \qquad t_1 = v, \qquad \tau_2 = y^s.$$

By translating the conditions upon the t, τ into terms of the new variables, we get the restrictions to which (8) is subjected:

(C_1): x, y odd > 0; u, v odd or even, > 0; $x^r > 2u$.

Further subdividing C_1 according as u is even or odd, we have two subclasses,

(C_{10}): x, y odd, > 0; u even, > 0; v odd or even, > 0; $x^r > 2u$;
(C_{11}): x, y odd, > 0; u odd, > 0; v odd or even, > 0; $x^r > 2u$.

Let $N_{ij}(2n)$ denote the number of solutions of (8) which belong to C_{ij}. Then, as in the first example, we have

$$\sum(-1)^{t_2}\varphi_{r,s}(2t_2+\tau_1,\tau_2) = N_{10}(2n) - N_{11}(2n).$$

The third partial sum also refers to (8), the substitution being

$$t_2 = v, \qquad \tau_1 = y^s - 2v, \qquad t_1 = u, \qquad \tau_2 = x^r,$$

and the corresponding classes

(C_{30}): x, y odd, >0; u even, >0; v odd or even, >0; $y^s > 2v$;
(C_{31}): x, y odd, >0; u odd, >0; v odd or even, >0; $y^s > 2v$,

whence $\sum(-1)^{t_1}\varphi_{r,s}(\tau_2, 2t_2+\tau_1) = N_{30}(2n) - N_{31}(2n)$.

The second partial sum refers to the equation

$$2n = -2v_1 x_1^r + 2u_1 y_1^s + 4u_1 v_1, \tag{9}$$

the substitution and the classes being, with a notation similar to that for the preceding cases,

$$t_2 = u_1, \qquad \tau_1 = 2u_1 - x_1^r, \qquad t_1 = v_1, \qquad \tau_2 = y_1^s;$$

(C_{20}): x_1, y_1 odd, $x_1 \gtreqless 0, y_1 > 0$; u_1 even, >0; v_1 odd or even, >0; $x_1^r < 2u_1$;
(C_{21}): x_1, y_1 odd, $x_1 \gtreqless 0, y_1 < 0$; u_1 odd, >0; v_1 odd or even, >0; $x_1^r < 2u_1$;

whence

$$\sum(-1)^{t_2}\varphi_{r,s}(2t_2-\tau_1,\tau_2) = N_{20}(2n) - N_{21}(2n).$$

The fourth partial sum refers to

$$2n = 2v_2 x_2^r - 2u_2 y_2^s + 4u_2 v_2, \tag{10}$$

the substitution and classes being

$$t_2 = v_2, \qquad \tau_1 = 2v_2 - y_2^s, \qquad t_1 = u_2, \qquad \tau_2 = x_2^r;$$

(C_{40}): x_2, y_2 odd, $x_2 > 0, y_2 \gtreqless 0$; u_2 even, >0; v_2 odd or even, >0; $y_2^s < 2v_2$;
(C_{41}): x_2, y_2 odd, $x_2 > 0, y_2 \gtreqless 0$; u_2 odd, >0; v_2 odd or even, >0; $y_2^s < 2v_2$;

whence

$$\sum(-1)^{t_1}\varphi_{r,s}(\tau_2, 2t_2-\tau_1) = N_{40}(2n) - N_{41}(2n).$$

The fifth partial sum refers to the equation

$$2n = x_3^r y_3^s + u_3^2 + v_3^2, \tag{11}$$

for which the substitution and classes are

$$t_1' = x_3^r, \qquad \tau_1' = y_3^s, \qquad m_2' = u_3^2 + v_3^2;$$

(C_{50}): x_3, y_3 odd, >0; u_3, v_3 of opposite parities, $\gtreqless 0$; $y_3 \equiv 1 \bmod 4$;
(C_{51}): x_3, y_3 odd, >0; u_3, v_3 of opposite parities, $\gtreqless 0$; $y_3 \equiv -1 \bmod 4$;

and we have

$$2\sum(-1|\tau_1')\xi(m_2')\varphi_{r,s}(t_1',\tau_1') = \tfrac{1}{2}[N_{50}(2n) - N_{51}(2n)].$$

To evaluate the right side of the identity we denote by $[x]$ the greatest integer which does not exceed x, and by t_j a positive divisor of n whose conjugate, τ_j, is a jth power. Then, the $\sum$ on the right referring to all t_r, t_s, we have at once

$$\sum\Big[\sum_{h=1}^{t}\{\varphi_{r,s}(2h-1,\tau) - (-1)^n\varphi_{r,s}(\tau, 2h-1)\}\Big]$$
$$= \sum\{[\sqrt[r]{2t_s - 1}] - (-1)^n[\sqrt[s]{2t_r - 1}]\}.$$

Combining all these results, we get for the four equations (8), (9), (10), (11) the following syzygy between the number of solutions belonging to the classes C_{ij}:

$$\begin{aligned}2\{N_{10}(2n) - N_{11}(2n) - N_{20}(2n) + N_{21}(2n) - N_{30}(2n) + N_{31}(2n)\\ + N_{40}(2n) - N_{41}(2n)\} + N_{50}(2n) - N_{51}(2n)\\ = 2\sum\{[\sqrt[r]{2t_s - 1}] - (-1)^n[\sqrt[s]{2t_r - 1}]\};\end{aligned}$$

and this may be regarded as a relation between the numbers of simultaneous representations of $2n$ in the system of forms

$$2vx^r + 2uy^s - 4uv; \qquad -2v_1x_1^r + 2u_1y_1^s + 4u_1v_1;$$
$$2v_2x_2^r - 2u_2y_2^s + 4u_2v_2; \qquad x_3^ry_3^r + u_3^2 + v_3^2,$$

subject to the given restrictions. In both examples the number of representations in each class is obviously, from the associate, finite.

8. The identity in § 6 is one paraphrase of the equation of three terms in elliptic functions; Liouville's in § 5 may be derived from the same source, as shown in papers presented to the Society in 1918. By the methods of those papers combined with the present, similar results for systems of any number of forms in any number of indeterminates may be found.

University of Washington,
Seattle, Wash.

MAXIMUM MODULUS OF SOME EXPRESSIONS OF LIMITED ANALYTIC FUNCTIONS *

BY

SŌICHI KAKEYA

Introduction

Some years ago I published a paper† on "*Upper and lower limits of some quantities regarding analytic functions*" and discussed some general theorems by which we could systematize certain problems treated independently by several authors and could solve them completely by means of a single principle.‡

In example 5 of that paper, I found the upper limit of

$$|f(0) + Af'(0)|$$

with respect to the functions $f(x)$ which are analytic and *numerically not greater than* 1 *in the domain* $|x| \leqq 1$.§ It was an example of the general problem to find the upper limit of

$$|c_0 f(0) + c_1 f'(0) + \cdots + c_n f^{(n)}(0)| \tag{1}$$

in the same domain of functions $f(x)$. A special case of the problem, namely to find the upper limit of

$$\left| f(0) + \frac{1}{1!} f'(0) + \cdots + \frac{1}{n!} f^{(n)}(0) \right|,$$

has been solved very elegantly by Prof. E. Landau.|| But his method is not applicable to the general case (1).

We may naturally generalize problem (1) to that of finding *the upper limit of*

$$\begin{aligned} V(f, c, \alpha) \equiv |&c_{10} f(\alpha_1) + c_{11} f'(\alpha_1) + \cdots + c_{1n_1} f^{(n_1)}(\alpha_1) \\ &+ c_{20} f(\alpha_2) + c_{21} f'(\alpha_2) + \cdots + c_{2n_2} f^{(n_2)}(\alpha_2) \\ &+ \cdots + c_{m0} f(\alpha_m) + c_{m1} f'(\alpha_m) \\ &+ \cdots + c_{mn_m} f^{(n_m)}(\alpha_m)|, \end{aligned} \tag{2}$$

where $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \cdots, \alpha_m$ *are given points within the unit circle* $|x| = 1$.

---

* Presented to the Society, February, 1923.

† Science Reports of the Tōhoku Imperial University, vol. 6 (1917), p. 153.

‡ See the examples given in the end of that paper.

§ Throughout the paper the domain is understood to include the boundary.

|| Archiv der Mathematik und Physik, ser. (3), vol. 21 (1913), p. 250, or his work "*Darstellung und Begründung einiger neuerer Ergebnisse der Funktionentheorie*," p. 20.

In my paper, above mentioned, I proved that *a function* $f(x)$ *giving the maximum of* (2) *exists and is a rational function of degree at most* $\sum_{i=1}^{m} n_i + m - 1$, *whose modulus is constantly equal to* 1 *along the unit circle* $|x| = 1$.* But I have never found any such simple method of getting the required maximum and extremal for this general problem as Professor Landau has found in his special case. The only method I could suggest is to calculate algebraically the maximum of (2) among rational functions of the form

$$f(x) = e^{i\theta} \frac{(x - a_1)(x - a_2) \cdots (x - a_\kappa)}{(\bar{a}_1 x - 1)(\bar{a}_2 x - 1) \cdots (\bar{a}_\kappa x - 1)}, \tag{3}$$

$\kappa = \sum n_i + m - 1$, $\bar{a}_i$ conjugate to a_i, θ real, $|a_1|, |a_2|, \cdots, |a_\kappa| \leqq 1$, which is the general expression of the rational function of degree at most κ, whose modulus along the unit circle is *constantly equal to* 1. We had, however, no further information about the extremal and extreme value thus obtained.

The main aim of this paper is to investigate more fully this extremal and this extremum.

I. Uniqueness of solution

It is convenient to prove at first the uniqueness of the extremal.

Our problem is *to find the maximum of* (2) *under the condition that* $f(x)$ *is analytic and numerically not greater than* 1 *for* $|x| \leqq 1$. *Here all the c's are given constants, not zero at the same time, and the* α*'s are given points within the unit circle,* i.e., $|\alpha_i| < 1$.

As stated above, there exists at least one extremal. Now let us suppose that we have two functions $f_1(x)$ and $f_2(x)$, both of which satisfy the given conditions and give the same maximum value of $V(f, c, \alpha)$, say M.

If we take suitable real constants θ_1 and θ_2, we can make the functions $e^{i\theta_1} f_1(x)$ and $e^{i\theta_2} f_2(x)$, which are also extremals, such that the expression within the sign $|\quad|$ in $V(f, c, \alpha)$ becomes positive when we substitute either of them for $f(x)$. And under these conditions it is evident that

$$\tfrac{1}{2}\{e^{i\theta_1} f_1(x) + e^{i\theta_2} f_2(x)\} = F(x)$$

is also an extremal.

Since $e^{i\theta_1} f_1(x)$ and $e^{i\theta_2} f_2(x)$ are numerically not greater than 1 along the unit circle, $F(x)$ must have the same property, and at any point on the circle, where the two functions $e^{i\theta_1} f_1(x)$ and $e^{i\theta_2} f_2(x)$ are *unequal*, it must have a modulus *less* than 1.

On the other hand, I have proved† that, among the functions $f(x)$ which

* This is a special case of Cor. 3b, p. 161, of my paper cited before.

† Science Reports of the Tōhoku Imperial University, vol. 4 (1915), p. 297. This was published in August, 1915. A few months later I saw a paper by Professor Pick, in Mathematische Annalen, vol. 77, regarding a similar character of analytic functions. It was published in December, 1915.

are analytic for $|x| \leqq 1$ and satisfy the conditions

$$
(4)\quad \begin{array}{llll}
f(\alpha_1) = F(\alpha_1), & f'(\alpha_1) = F'(\alpha_1), & \cdots, & f^{(n_1)}(\alpha_1) = F^{(n_1)}(\alpha_1) \\
\cdot\ \cdot\ \cdot & \cdot\ \cdot\ \cdot & & \cdot\ \cdot\ \cdot \\
f(\alpha_m) = F(\alpha_m), & f'(\alpha_m) = F'(\alpha_m), & \cdots, & f^{(n_m)}(\alpha_m) = F^{(n_m)}(\alpha_m),
\end{array}
$$

there is only one function $f_0(x)$ whose maximum modulus for $|x| \leqq 1$ is less than that of any other function. $f_0(x)$ is a rational function of degree at most $\kappa = \sum n_i + m - 1$ and is of constant modulus, N say, along the unit circle $|x| = 1$.

Now the quantity N can not be greater than or equal to 1, for the function $F(x)$ itself, whose modulus is not greater than 1 along the unit circle and is at least less than 1 at some point on the circle, and therefore is different from $f_0(x)$, satisfies the same condition (4). Let us now suppose that N is less than 1. Since $f_0(x)$ gives the value M of $V(f, c, \alpha)$ when we substitute it for $f(x)$, we can evidently find a sufficiently small variation of $f_0(x)$, say $\delta f_0(x)$, such that

$$|f_0(x) + \delta f_0(x)| < 1 \qquad \text{for} \qquad |x| \leqq 1$$

and the expression (2) becomes greater than M when we substitute $f_0(x) + \delta f_0(x)$ for $f(x)$, for (2) is a linear function of $f(x)$ and its derivatives. Hence M is not the maximum and we have a contradiction.

The only remaining possibility is that $e^{i\theta_1} f_1(x)$ and $e^{i\theta_2} f_2(x)$ be identically equal along the unit circle, and hence within the circle. Hence we see that $f_1(x)$ and $f_2(x)$ can differ at most by a constant factor whose modulus is 1.

Conversely if $f_1(x)$ is an extremal of our problem, any function $f_2(x)$ which differs from $f_1(x)$ only by a constant factor of modulus 1 is evidently an extremal.

By combining the results of the earlier paper with those of the present section we have the following

Theorem: *Let $\{f(x)\}$ be the set of all functions $f(x)$ which in the closed domain $|x| \leqq 1$ are analytic and of absolute value not exceeding unity. Let $c_{10}, c_{11}, \cdots c_{1n_1}; c_{20}, c_{21}, \cdots c_{2n_2}; \cdots; c_{m0}, c_{m1}, \cdots c_{mn_m}$ be a set of given (complex) constants not all of which are zero. Let $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \cdots \alpha_m$ be a set of given complex constants each of absolute value less than unity. Let*

$$
\begin{aligned}
V(f, c, \alpha) \equiv |c_{10} f(\alpha_1) + c_{11} f'(\alpha_1) + \cdots + c_{1n_1} f^{(n_1)}(\alpha_1) + c_{20} f(\alpha_2) \\
+ c_{21} f'(\alpha_2) + \cdots + c_{2n_2} f^{(n_2)}(\alpha_2) + \cdots + c_{m0} f(\alpha_m) \\
+ c_{m1} f'(\alpha_m) + \cdots + c_{mn_m} f^{(n_m)}(\alpha_m)|.
\end{aligned}
$$

Then: (1) *There exists at least one function $f_0(x)$ iu the set $\{f(x)\}$ such that $V(f_0, c, \alpha) = M$, the least upper bound of $V(f, c, \alpha)$ on $\{f(x)\}$.*

(2) *$f_0(x)$ is a rational function of degree*

$$\kappa = m - 1 + \sum_{i=1}^{i=m} n_i$$

at most, is of form

$$f_0(x) \equiv e^{i\theta} \frac{(x - a_1)(x - a_2) \cdots (x - a_\kappa)}{(\bar{a}_1 x - 1)(\bar{a}_2 x - 1) \cdots (\bar{a}_\kappa x - 1)}$$

($\bar{a}_i$ conjugate to a_i, $|a_i| \leqq 1$, $i = 1, 2, \cdots \kappa$, θ real and constant); and on the periphery $|x| = 1$ of the unit circle is of constant absolute value unity.

(3) *$f_0(x)$ is uniquely determined except for the constant factor $e^{i\theta}$ of unit absolute value.*

(4) *If Θ is any real number, and*

$$F_0(x) \equiv e^{i\Theta} f_0(x),$$

then

$$V(F_0, c, \alpha) = V(f_0, c, \alpha) = M.$$

II. Transformation of the problem

We will now put the problem into a more convenient form.

Since the function $f(x)$ under consideration is analytic in the unit circle and all the points $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \cdots, \alpha_m$ lie *within* the unit circle, we have

$$f^{(p)}(\alpha_i) = \frac{p!}{2\pi i} \int_C \frac{f(x)}{(x - \alpha_i)^{p+1}} dx,$$

C denoting that the integration is effected along the unit circle. Hence the expression $V(f, c, \alpha)$ can be written in the form

$$V(f, c, \alpha) = I \equiv \int_C \frac{Q(x)}{P(x)} f(x) dx, \tag{5}$$

where

$$P(x) = (x - \alpha_1)^{n_1+1} (x - \alpha_2)^{n_2+1} \cdots (x - \alpha_m)^{n_m+1} \tag{6}$$

and $Q(x)$ is a polynomial at most of degree $\kappa = \sum n_i + m - 1$. Our problem is, then, equivalent to that of finding the maximum modulus of the integral I.

The integral I is evidently equal to

$$J \equiv \int_C \left\{ \frac{Q(x)}{P(x)} + \varphi(x) \right\} f(x) dx, \tag{7}$$

where $\varphi(x)$ is an arbitrary function which is analytic in the unit circle. So our problem is *to find the maximum modulus of J which is known to be invariant with respect to the form of $\varphi(x)$.*

Any function which is regular in the unit circle except for $\kappa + 1$ poles can be put in the form $Q(x)/P(x) + \varphi(x)$. Hence our problem is equivalent

to that of finding the maximum modulus of

$$\int_C R(x) f(x)\, dx,$$

$R(x)$ being a given function which is meromorphic within the unit circle and regular along the circle.

For the sake of simplicity, we will put hereafter

$$\sum n_i + m = \kappa + 1 = n$$

and

$$P(x) = (x - \alpha_1)(x - \alpha_2) \cdots (x - \alpha_n) \tag{8}$$

where $|\alpha_i| < 1$, and let $Q(x)$ denote a given polynomial of degree at most $n - 1$. If we make some of the α's equal to one another, then we can get the form (6).

III. Solution of the problem

In our problem, we can take as $\varphi(x)$ any function analytic in the unit circle.

Now assume that we could find a function $\varphi(x)$ and a set of constants $a_1, a_2, \cdots, a_m$, which are such that the function

$$x\left\{\frac{Q(x)}{P(x)} + \varphi(x)\right\}\prod_{i=1}^{m}\frac{x - a_i}{\bar{a}_i x - 1}, \tag{9}$$

where

$$m \leqq n - 1, \qquad |a_i| < 1 \qquad \text{for} \qquad i = 1, 2, \cdots, m, \tag{10}$$

has a *constant amplitude* along the unit circle $|x| = 1$. Then we can easily see that the *required maximum* of I or J is

$$M = \left|\int_C\left\{\frac{Q(x)}{P(x)} + \varphi(x)\right\}\prod_{i=1}^{m}\frac{x - a_i}{\bar{a}_i x - 1}\, dx\right| = \left|\int_C \frac{Q(x)}{P(x)}\prod_{i=1}^{m}\frac{x - a_i}{\bar{a}_i x - 1}\, dx\right| \tag{11}$$

and the *required extremal* is

$$f_0(x) = e^{i\theta}\prod_{i=1}^{m}\frac{x - a_i}{\bar{a}_i x - 1}. \tag{12}$$

For, in this case, the function $f_0(x)$ is analytic in the unit circle by virtue of (10) and is of constant modulus 1 along the circle, so M is one of the absolute values of the form (5) or (7); and moreover, taking any function $f(x)$ analytic and numerically not greater than 1 for $|x| \leqq 1$, we have, putting $x = e^{i\sigma}$ for the integration,

$$\left|\int_C\left\{\frac{Q(x)}{P(x)} + \varphi(x)\right\}f(x)\, dx\right| \leqq \int_0^{2\pi}\left|x\left\{\frac{Q(x)}{P(x)} + \varphi(x)\right\}\right| d\sigma$$

$$= \int_0^{2\pi}\left|x\left\{\frac{Q(x)}{P(x)} + \varphi(x)\right\}\prod_{i=1}^{m}\frac{x - a_i}{\bar{a}_i x - 1}\right| d\sigma;$$

but since the expression of the last integrand has a constant amplitude throughout the integration we have the last integral

$$= \left| \int_0^{2\pi} x \left\{ \frac{Q(x)}{P(x)} + \varphi(x) \right\} \prod_{i=1}^{m} \frac{x - a_i}{\bar{a}_i x - 1} d\sigma \right|$$

$$= \left| \int_C \left\{ \frac{Q(x)}{P(x)} + \varphi(x) \right\} \prod_{i=1}^{m} \frac{x - a_i}{\bar{a}_i x - 1} dx \right| = M.$$

Now since $|\alpha_i| < 1$, the function $[\prod_{i=1}^{n} (\bar{\alpha}_i x - 1)]^{-1}$ must be analytic in the unit circle. Hence if the remainder and the quotient of $Q(x) \prod (\bar{\alpha}_i x - 1)$ divided by $P(x)$ are $R(x)$ and $S(x)$ respectively, then for any function $\psi(x)$ which is analytic in the unit circle we can find uniquely the function $\varphi(x)$ which is also analytic in the unit circle and satisfies the equation

$$Q(x) + P(x)\varphi(x) = \frac{R(x) + P(x)\psi(x)}{\prod^{n} (\bar{\alpha}_i x - 1)}. \tag{13}$$

The function $\varphi(x)$ is to be found from

$$\varphi(x) = \frac{\psi(x) - S(x)}{\prod^{n} (\bar{\alpha}_i x - 1)}. \tag{14}$$

On the other hand, we have the theorem, which I will prove in the next chapter, that *there exists a function $\psi(x)$ analytic in the unit circle, which satisfies a relation of the form*

$$R(x) + P(x)\psi(x) = c \prod_{i=1}^{m} (\bar{a}_i x - 1)^2 \prod_{i=1}^{n-m-1} (x - b_i)(\bar{b}_i x - 1), \tag{15}$$

where c and the b_i's are constants, the a_i's are constants numerically less than 1, *and m does not exceed $n - 1$.*

If we construct the function $\varphi(x)$ from the above function $\psi(x)$ by the formula (14), then we get, after a short calculation,

$$\begin{aligned} & x \left\{ \frac{Q(x)}{P(x)} + \varphi(x) \right\} \prod^{m} \frac{x - a_i}{\bar{a}_i x - 1} \\ & \quad = c\, \frac{x \prod^{m} (x - a_i)(\bar{a}_i x - 1) \prod^{n-m-1} (x - b_i)(\bar{b}_i x - 1)}{\prod^{n} (x - \alpha_i)(\bar{\alpha}_i x - 1)}. \end{aligned} \tag{16}$$

But the variation of amplitude of the quadratic function which has the form $(x - t)(\bar{t}x - 1)$ along the unit circle $|x| = 1$ is equal to that of x. Hence the variation of amplitude of the right-hand member of (16) is zero, i.e., the function has *constant amplitude* along the unit circle.

Hence we see that there exists always a function $\varphi(x)$ and a set of constants a_i under the required conditions, which causes the left-hand member

of (16), namely the expression (9), to have constant amplitude along the unit circle. The $\varphi(x)$ and the a_i are determined by (14) and (15). Thus the problem is solved theoretically.

But I can only prove, in the next chapter, the existence of $\psi(x)$, a_i, b_i and c of (15), without knowing any simple and practical method of finding them. So, in this respect, our problem is not yet completely solved.

IV. Proof of auxiliary theorem

We are now to prove the theorem about the relation (15). At first we will assume that all the α's are *different.*

The left-hand side of (15) is $R(x) + P(x)\psi(x)$, where $\psi(x)$ is an arbitrary function analytic for $|x| \leqq 1$, $R(x)$ is a given polynomial of degree $n-1$ at most, and $P(x)$ is a given polynomial of degree n, whose zeros are all within the unit circle. This is merely the general expression of the function $F(x)$ analytic for $|x| \leqq 1$, which satisfies the conditions

$$F(\alpha_i) = R(\alpha_i), \qquad i = 1, 2, \cdots, n.$$

Therefore we can state as follows the theorem to be proved:

Let $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \cdots, \alpha_n$ be n different points within the unit circle $|x| = 1$ and $u_1, u_2, \cdots, u_n$ be n given constants. Then there exists a function of the form

$$F(x) = c \prod_{i=1}^{m} (\bar{a}_i x - 1)^2 \prod_{i=1}^{n-m-1} (x - b_i)(\bar{b}_i x - 1), \tag{17}$$

$$m \leqq n - 1, \qquad |a_i| < 1, \qquad \text{for} \qquad i = 1, 2, \cdots, m, \tag{18}$$

which satisfies the conditions

$$F(\alpha_i) = u_i, \qquad i = 1, 2, 3, \cdots n. \tag{19}$$

In other words two sets of constants $\{a_i\}$, $\{b_i\}$, one constant c, and one integer m can be found satisfying the above relations. The function $F(x)$ thus obtained is unique.

If there exists one function (17), then the function

$$\prod_{i=1}^{m} \frac{x - a_i}{\bar{a}_i x - 1}$$

determined by a_i is an extremal of the corresponding problem of the preceding chapter, $Q(x)$ and $R(x)$ being the polynomials of degree at most $n-1$ determined from (13) and (15) or from the relations

$$R(\alpha_i) = u_i, \qquad Q(\alpha_i) = \frac{u_i}{\prod_{k=1}^{n} (\bar{\alpha}_k \alpha_i - 1)}.$$

Such an extremal is known to be unique save for a factor of the form $e^{i\theta}$. Hence if there are two functions $F_1(x)$ and $F_2(x)$ of the form (17) satisfying (18) and (19), they must have common values for a_i. So we have the relation of the form

$$T(x) = \frac{F_1(x)}{F_2(x)} = c\prod_{i=1}^{n-m-1}\frac{(x-b_{i1})(\bar{b}_{i1}x-1)}{(x-b_{i2})(\bar{b}_{i2}x-1)}$$

and

$$T(\alpha_i) = 1, \qquad i = 1, 2, \cdots, n.$$

If some of the u_i's, say $u_n, u_{n-1}, \cdots, u_\nu$, are equal to zero, then the corresponding $n-\nu+1$ of the b_{i1}'s are equal to $n-\nu+1$ of the b_{i2}'s respectively, and hence we are to take $\nu-1$ instead of n in the above relation. Here as before we see that $T(x)$ has constant amplitude, say ω, along the unit circle.

Let us suppose that $|b_{i2}| \neq 1$, $i = 1, 2, \cdots, n-m-1$, and that $\omega \neq 0$. Since $re^{i\omega} - 1$ can not change its amplitude by any angle more than or equal to π by means of the variation of the positive quantity r, the function

$$T(x) - 1 = \prod^{n-m-1}\frac{(x-b_{i1})(\bar{b}_{i1}x-1)}{(x-b_{i2})(\bar{b}_{i2}x-1)} - 1 \tag{20}$$

can not change its amplitude when x makes a complete revolution along the unit circle. But, on the other hand, the function (20) can have only $n-m-1$ poles b_{i2} and has at least n zeros α_i within the unit circle, so that the change of amplitude must be at least $2(m+1)\pi$. Thus we are led to an absurdity.

In the case when $\omega = 0$, we can also establish a similar contradiction, taking the function $T(x) - \epsilon$, where ϵ is some complex number sufficiently near to 1 such that the function $T(x) - \epsilon$ has at least n zeros sufficiently near to α_i. In the case where some of the $|b_{i2}|$ are equal to 1, we have again a similar absurdity by making those $|b_{i2}|$ so little smaller than 1 that the transformed function has at least n zeros sufficiently near to α_i.

The only remaining possibility, then, is that $T(x) - 1$ is identically zero, namely $F_1(x) \equiv F_2(x)$. Hence we see that the function of the form (17) must be *unique* in case it exists.

Here we mean the uniqueness of the function $F(x)$ in (17), but the constants c, a_i, b_i are not determined separately; for example we can interchange the values of a_1, a_2 or of b_1, b_2.

We have identically

$$(x-b_i)(\bar{b}_i x - 1) = b_i\bar{b}_i\left(x - \frac{1}{\bar{b}_i}\right)\left(\frac{1}{b_i}x - 1\right),$$

and therefore taking one or the other form of factors we can always make

$$|b_i| \leqq 1, \qquad i = 1, 2, \cdots, n-m-1 \tag{21}$$

in the expression (17). We assume this relation hereafter.

Under these circumstances, the constant c and the two aggregates $\{a_i\}$, $\{b_i\}$ are determined separately in case they exist, except for the case where $c = 0$, namely

(22) $$u_1 = u_2 = \cdots = u_n = 0.$$

If we take ρu_i instead of u_i, the corresponding $\{a_i\}$, $\{b_i\}$ are invariant and c becomes ρc. Hence we see that $\{a_i\}$, $\{b_i\}$ are perfectly determined in case they exist, when we give the ratios

(23) $$u_1 : u_2 : \cdots : u_n$$

or, as usual, the sequence of values

(24) $$\frac{u_1}{r}, \quad \frac{u_2}{r}, \quad \ldots, \quad \frac{u_n}{r}$$

where

$$r = \{|u_1|^2 + |u_2|^2 + \cdots + |u_n|^2\}^{\frac{1}{2}}.$$

We now consider a Riemann surface S consisting of two overlapping unit circles connected along their whole peripheries, the common periphery being supposed to belong to the second sheet. Mark the numbers a_i on the first sheet and the numbers b_i on the second sheet. Then we get an aggregate of $n - 1$ points on S corresponding to the ratios (23) or to the sequence (24). *The ratios* (23) *vary continuously as the corresponding aggregate* $\{t_i\}$ *on* S *varies continuously.* For any factor of (17) is continuous with respect to a_i or b_i, and when a_i on the first sheet comes to b_i on the second sheet passing through the point t ($|t| = 1$) on the periphery the factor $(\bar{t}x - 1)^2$ suddenly changes to $(x - t)(\bar{t}x - 1) = t(\bar{t}x - 1)^2$ at the moment of passing the periphery, so that all u_i's are only multiplied by a common factor t, the ratios remaining unchanged.

Conversely, if we suppose that $\{t_i\}$ on S always exists corresponding to the given ratios (23), then it must vary *continuously* as the given ratios (23) vary continuously. For in the contrary case, we must have at least two different limiting aggregates $\{t_i'\}$, $\{t_i''\}$ to which $\{t_i\}$ tends when the sequence (24) tends to a fixed sequence $\{u_i/r\}$ at which $\{t_i\}$ is discontinuous. But since the sequence (24) varies continuously with $\{t_i\}$ we must have then the two aggregates $\{t_i'\}$ and $\{t_i''\}$ both of which correspond to the same sequence $\{u_i/r\}$. This is incompatible with the unique determination of $\{a_i\}$, $\{b_i\}$ by means of $\{u_i/r\}$.*

If we now put

$E(x, t) = (\bar{t}x - 1)^2$ when t is on the first sheet of S, and
$E(x, t) = (x - t)(\bar{t}x - 1)$ when t is on the second sheet of S,

* For the general theorem relating to this property, see Pierpont's *Theory of Functions of Real Variables*, II, p. 609.

then the theorem to be proved is that there is one and only one function of the form

$$F(x) = c\prod_{i=1}^{n-1} E(x, t_i)$$

under the conditions

$$F(\alpha_i) = u_i, \qquad i = 1, 2, \cdots, n.$$

I will prove this by mathematical induction assuming the theorem for the case $n-1$. It is evident that we can assume in our proof, without loss of generality, that every u_i, $i = 1, 2, \cdots, n$, is not zero.

By assumption, there exists one and hence only one function of the form

$$G(x) = c\prod_{i=1}^{n-2} E(x, t_i) = cH(x)$$

when we have the condition

$$G(\alpha_i) = \frac{u_i}{E(\alpha_i, t)}, \qquad i = 1, 2, \cdots, n-1.$$

In other words an aggregate $\{t_1, t_2, \cdots, t_{n-2}\}$ is uniquely determined in terms of the parameter t when we require that the ratios

$$\frac{u_1}{E(\alpha_1, t)} : \frac{u_2}{E(\alpha_2, t)} : \cdots : \frac{u_{n-1}}{E(\alpha_{n-1}, t)} \tag{25}$$

shall be equal to

$$H(\alpha_1) : H(\alpha_2) : \cdots : H(\alpha_{n-1}). \tag{26}$$

Now if the function

$$K(t) = H(\alpha_n)E(\alpha_n, t)\frac{u_1}{H(\alpha_1)E(\alpha_1, t)} = u_1\frac{E(\alpha_n, t)\prod^{n-2} E(\alpha_n, t_i)}{E(\alpha_1, t)\prod^{n-2} E(\alpha_1, t_i)} \tag{27}$$

should become equal to u_n for some value of t, say $t = t_{n-1}$, then for the corresponding $\{t_i\}$ we have

$$\frac{u_1}{H(\alpha_1)E(\alpha_1, t_{n-1})}H(\alpha_n) = \frac{u_n}{E(\alpha_n, t_{n-1})}$$

or

$$G(\alpha_n) = \frac{u_n}{E(\alpha_n, t_{n-1})}.$$

Hence if we put

$$F(x) = G(x)E(x, t_{n-1}) = c\prod_{i=1}^{n-1} E(x, t_i),$$

then

$$F(\alpha_i) = u_i, \qquad i = 1, 2, \cdots, n;$$

and the theorem is therefore proved for the case n.

Now every term of the ratios (25) is evidently continuous with respect to

t on the surface S except at the points $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \cdots, \alpha_{n-1}$ on the second sheet and at the points on the common periphery of the circular sheets. If t tends to the periphery from the first sheet, the limiting ratio is

$$\frac{u_1}{(\bar{t}\alpha_1 - 1)^2} : \frac{u_2}{(\bar{t}\alpha_2 - 1)^2} : \cdots : \frac{u_{n-1}}{(\bar{t}\alpha_{n-1} - 1)^2};$$

and if t comes from the second sheet the ratio is

$$\frac{u_1}{(\alpha_1 - t)(\bar{t}\alpha_1 - 1)} : \frac{u_2}{(\alpha_2 - t)(\bar{t}\alpha_2 - 1)} : \cdots : \frac{u_{n-1}}{(\alpha_{n-1} - t)(\bar{t}\alpha_{n-1} - 1)}$$

which is equal to

$$\frac{u_1}{t(\bar{t}\alpha_1 - 1)^2} : \frac{u_2}{t(\bar{t}\alpha_2 - 1)^2} : \cdots : \frac{u_{n-1}}{t(\bar{t}\alpha_{n-1} - 1)^2},$$

since $|t| = 1$. These two ratios are equal. Hence the ratio (25) is continuous when t passes the periphery from the first sheet to the second.

When t approaches α_i on the second sheet, i being one of the numbers $1, 2, 3, \cdots, n-1$, the ith term of the ratio (25) tends to infinity while the other terms remain finite, namely the ith term $H(\alpha_i)$ of the ratio (26) remains finite while the other terms $H(\alpha_1), H(\alpha_2), \cdots, H(\alpha_{i-1}), H(\alpha_{i+1}), \cdots, H(\alpha_{n-1})$ tend to zero. Therefore the aggregate $\{t_1, t_2, \cdots, t_{n-2}\}$ must tend to the aggregate $\{\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \cdots, \alpha_{i-1}, \alpha_{i+1}, \cdots, \alpha_{n-1}\}$ of the second sheet as a whole; and consequently $H(\alpha_i), H(\alpha_n), E(\alpha_n, t)$ tend respectively to some finite constants not equal to zero. When t makes a complete positive revolution along a sufficiently small circle around the point α_i on the second sheet, i being one of $2, 3, \cdots, n-1$, then the fraction

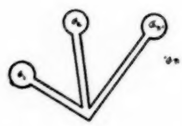
$$\frac{u_1}{E(\alpha_1, t)} \Big/ \frac{u_i}{E(\alpha_i, t)} = \frac{H(\alpha_1)}{H(\alpha_i)}$$

makes a complete positive revolution along a sufficiently small circuit around the origin. And, since $H(\alpha_i)$ remains almost fixed and not zero, $H(\alpha_1)$ makes a complete positive revolution along a sufficiently small circuit around the origin. Hence the function $K(t)$ makes a negative revolution around the origin describing approximately a large circle. The same variation of $K(t)$ can be seen when t makes a positive revolution around the point α_1 on the second sheet, since $K(t)$ has the factor $[E(\alpha_1, t)]^{-1}$. Lastly if t tends to α_n on the second sheet, no term of (26) can approach zero, and $K(t)$ which has the factor $E(\alpha_n, t)$ must tend to zero.

The function $K(t)$ is continuous unless t approaches some one of the points $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \cdots, \alpha_{n-1}$. For under these circumstances $\{t_i\}$ is continuous as I have said before, $H(\alpha_1)$ and $E(\alpha_1, t)$ do not approach zero, and when t or t_i

passes through the periphery of S, the denominator and numerator of $K(t)$ are multiplied by the same factor t or t_i at the same time.

Now let t move positively along the $n-1$ loops around $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \cdots, \alpha_{n-1}$ of the second sheet of S, which consist of $n-1$ sufficiently small circles each around one of the $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \cdots, \alpha_{n-1}$ of the second sheet and $n-1$ double paths radiating from some one point (Fig. I). Then the corresponding path of $K(t)$ on the ordinary complex plane consists of $n-1$ large approximate



circles around the origin and $n-1$ double paths radiating from some one point (Fig. II). By a small variation of the double path, if necessary, we can make the given point u_n lie within the path II.

We can make now the loop path I vary continuously on the Riemann surface S without passing through any of the points $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \cdots, \alpha_{n-1}$ on the second sheet so that ultimately it reduces to a point α_n, in which case the corresponding path II must reduce to the origin. During this continuous variation of the path II, it must pass in some moment the point u_n. In other words, we must have some value of t, say $t = t_{n-1}$, for which $K(t) = u_n$. Thus the theorem is proved, in virtue of the preceding remark, for the case n.

The theorem is evidently true when $n = 1$, and therefore, by the above mathematical induction, our theorem is proved, for the case where all α's are different.

Next we can easily extend the theorem to the general case where some of the α's are equal, namely the case where the function $P(x)$ has multiple zeros, say

$$(n_\kappa + 1)\text{uple zeros } \alpha_\kappa, \qquad \kappa = 1, 2, \cdots, p,$$
$$\sum n_\kappa + p = n.$$

In this case, the expression $R(x) + P(x)\psi(x)$ is the general form of an analytic function $F(x)$ for $|x| \leqq 1$, whose derivatives at α_κ are given as follows:

$$\begin{array}{llll} F(\alpha_1) = R(\alpha_1), & F'(\alpha_1) = R'(\alpha_1), & \cdots, & F^{(n_1)}(\alpha_1) = R^{(n_1)}(\alpha_1), \\ \cdot\ \cdot\ \cdot & \cdot\ \cdot\ \cdot & \cdot\ \cdot\ \cdot & \cdot\ \cdot\ \cdot \\ F(\alpha_p) = R(\alpha_p), & F'(\alpha_p) = R'(\alpha_p), & \cdots, & F^{(n_p)}(\alpha_p) = R^{(n_p)}(\alpha_p). \end{array}$$

Our extended theorem can then be stated as follows:

There exists one and only one function of the form

$$F(x) = c\prod_{i=1}^{m}(\bar{a}_i x - 1)^2 \prod_{i=1}^{n-m-1}(x - b_i)(\bar{b}_i x - 1), \tag{28}$$

$$0 \leqq m \leqq n-1, \qquad |a_i| < 1, \qquad i = 1, 2, \cdots, m,$$

under the condition,

$$F(\alpha_\kappa) = u_\kappa, \qquad F'(\alpha_\kappa) = u_{\kappa 1}, \qquad \cdots, \qquad F^{(n_\kappa)}(\alpha_\kappa) = u_{\kappa n_\kappa}, \tag{29}$$
$$\kappa = 1, 2, \cdots, p,$$

$$\sum n_\kappa + p = n,$$

where $u_{\kappa j}$ are given constants and α_κ are given constants within the unit circle.

Its uniqueness can be proved by just the same way as before. Its existence can be proved by considering the limit when $n_\kappa + 1$ different α's in the preceding theorem become equal to α_κ, making the corresponding $n_\kappa + 1$ values of the u's equal to the corresponding values of the function

$$u_{\kappa 0} + \frac{1}{1!}u_{\kappa 1}(x - \alpha_\kappa) + \frac{1}{2!}u_{\kappa 2}(x - \alpha_\kappa)^2 + \cdots + \frac{1}{n_\kappa!}u_{\kappa n_\kappa}(x - \alpha_n)^{n_\kappa}.$$

In this limiting process, the corresponding sequence of expressions

$$\prod_{i=1}^{n-1} E(x, t_i)$$

must have a partial sequence which will converge to a definite expression of the same form, from which we get the required function by multiplying by some constant. Thus our theorem assumed in chapter III is completely proved.

V. Remarks

As has been said before, I have no practical method to obtain the expression (15) for $R(x)$ and $P(x)$. The only thing which I have shown is some deeper relation between the required maximum and extremal.

I hope that the theorem of the chapter IV may be proved purely *algebraically*, and the actual method of factorization determined if possible. If this could be done we can not only complete our present problem but also can prove my former theorem from which I deduced the uniqueness of our solution.

From the condition (29) we can easily calculate the values $v_{\kappa j}$ for which

$$G(\alpha_\kappa) = \pm v_{\kappa 0}, \qquad G'(\alpha_\kappa) = \pm v_{\kappa 1}, \qquad \cdots, \qquad G^{(n_\kappa)}(\alpha_\kappa) = \pm v_{\kappa n_\kappa}, \tag{30}$$
$$\kappa = 1, 2, \cdots, p,$$

where

$$G(x) = \sqrt{F(x)},$$

save for ambiguity of sign.

Take a fixed upper or lower sign of v_{kj} for each k and construct a polynomial $G(x)$ at most of degree $n-1$, which satisfies the condition (30). It is uniquely determined by the method of interpolation.

If

$$G(x) = c\prod_{i=1}^{q}(\bar{a}_i x - 1), \qquad 0 \leqq q \leqq n-1,$$

thus obtained has all its zeros greater than 1 in absolute value, namely if all $|a|$'s are *less* than 1, then

$$F(x) = c^2\prod_{i=1}^{q}(\bar{a}_i x - 1)^2$$

is the required expression for $F(x)$.

The problem treated by Professor Landau was fortunately one which belongs to this *simple* case.

Since we can not have two or more different expressions for the required $F(x)$, we obtain the following *theorem of algebra*.

Taking either the upper or the lower sign of (30) for each k, we get 2^p different functions $G(x)$, half of which differ only by signs from the remaining ones. Consider now these 2^{p-1} essentially different functions. There can not exist more than one function whose zeros are all numerically greater than 1 (strictly speaking, greater than the greatest of the $|\alpha_i|$).

We were considering the variable in the unit circle $|x| = 1$ and the function whose modulus does not exceed 1. But it can be very easily extended to the case where the variable is bounded in the domain $|x| \leqq r$ and the function in question is limited to be $|f(x)| \leqq R$.

VI. Examples

We shall now consider a few examples.

1. To find the function $f(x)$, analytic and numerically not exceeding 1 for $|x| \leqq 1$, which makes

$$|f(\alpha) + Af'(\alpha)|$$

greatest, α being a given constant numerically less than 1.

Here we have

$$p = 1, \qquad n_1 = 1, \qquad \alpha_1 = \alpha,$$

$$P(x) = (x-\alpha)^2, \qquad Q(x) = \frac{A + (x-\alpha)}{2\pi i},$$

$$R(x) = \frac{1}{2\pi i}A(\alpha\bar{\alpha} - 1)^2 + \frac{1}{2\pi i}(\alpha\bar{\alpha} - 1)\{(\alpha\bar{\alpha} - 1) + 2A\bar{\alpha}\}(x-\alpha).$$

There are only two cases, namely $m = 1$ or $m = 0$. First assuming that $m = 1$ we put

$$R(x) + (x-\alpha)^2\psi(x) = c(\bar{a}x - 1)^2 = c\{\bar{a}(x-\alpha) + \bar{a}\alpha - 1\}^2;$$

then we get

$$\frac{1}{2\pi i} A(\alpha\bar{\alpha} - 1)^2 = c(\bar{a}\alpha - 1)^2,$$

$$\frac{1}{2\pi i}(\alpha\bar{\alpha} - 1)\{(\alpha\bar{\alpha} - 1) + 2A\bar{\alpha}\} = 2c\bar{a}(\bar{a}\alpha - 1).$$

Hence

$$\frac{\bar{a}\alpha - 1}{2\bar{a}} = \frac{A(\alpha\bar{\alpha} - 1)}{(\alpha\bar{\alpha} - 1) + 2A\bar{\alpha}}$$

or

$$\bar{a} = \frac{(\alpha\bar{\alpha} - 1) + 2A\bar{\alpha}}{\alpha(\alpha\bar{\alpha} - 1) + 2A}.$$

If this value of $\bar{a}$ is numerically less than 1, namely

$$A > \frac{1 - |\alpha|^2}{2},$$

then the required extremal is

$$f(x) = e^{i\theta}\frac{x - a}{\bar{a}x - 1}$$

$$= e^{i\theta}\frac{x - \dfrac{(\alpha\bar{\alpha} - 1) + 2\bar{A}\alpha}{\bar{\alpha}(\alpha\bar{\alpha} - 1) + 2\bar{A}}}{\dfrac{(\alpha\bar{\alpha} - 1) + 2A\bar{\alpha}}{\alpha(\alpha\bar{\alpha} - 1) + 2A}x - 1}.$$

If

$$A \leqq \frac{1 - |\alpha|^2}{2},$$

then m must be zero and hence the required function is

$$f(x) = e^{i\theta}.$$

2. To find the function, analytic and numerically not greater than 1 for $|x| \leqq 1$, which makes $|f(\alpha) - f(-\alpha)|$ greatest, α being a given constant such that $0 < |\alpha| < 1$.

Here we have

$$n = 2, \qquad \alpha_1 = \alpha, \qquad \alpha_2 = -\alpha,$$

$$P(x) = x^2 - \alpha^2, \qquad Q(x) = \frac{\alpha}{\pi i}.$$

$R(x)$ is the remainder of $\alpha(1 - \bar{\alpha}^2 x^2)/(\pi i)$ divided by $x^2 - \alpha^2$. So the function $F(x) = R(x) + P(x)\psi(x)$ has the property that

$$F(\alpha) = F(-\alpha) = \alpha(1 - \bar{\alpha}^2\alpha^2)/(\pi i).$$

Hence if we put

$$F(x) = c(\bar{a}x - 1)^2,$$

assuming that $m = 1$, we must have

$$\frac{F(\alpha)}{F(-\alpha)} = \left(\frac{\bar{a}\alpha - 1}{\bar{a}\alpha + 1}\right)^2 = 1,$$

or

$$\bar{a} = 0.$$

Thus $\bar{a}$ is numerically less than 1, and hence the required extremal is

$$f(x) = e^{i\theta}\frac{x - a}{\bar{a}x - 1} = e^{i\varphi}x.$$

Higher Normal School,
Koishikawa, Tōkyō, Japan.

DIFFERENTIAL VARIATIONS IN BALLISTICS, WITH APPLICATIONS TO THE QUALITATIVE PROPERTIES OF THE TRAJECTORY *

By

T. H. GRONWALL

The investigation of the influence on the trajectory of changes in initial velocity, atmospheric conditions, etc., is most conveniently performed by the method of differential variations. These satisfy a system of linear differential equations of the fourth order, which was first set up in its most general form by F. R. Moulton. By the systematic use of the system of differential equations adjoint to the preceding one, Bliss has developed a very simple and practical method for computing all the differential variations.†

This method makes use of the existence of a first integral $\lambda = \text{const.}$ (for explanation of notations, see section 1) by means of which the adjoint system reduces from the fourth to the third order. In the present paper, another first integral $x'\lambda + y'\mu + x''\nu + y''\rho = \text{const.}$ is established, and the adjoint system thereby reduced to the second order (sections 1–3), and in consequence, the numerical computation of the variations is materially shortened.

Of greater theoretical interest is the fact that, the system of linear differential equations involved being of the *second* order, the general behavior of their solutions may be determined in a fairly complete manner. This being done, a large number of qualitative properties of the trajectory follow almost immediately (sections 4 and 5). In the last section, attention is called to some unsolved problems of the same kind.

1. The differential equations for the variations, and the adjoint system

The retardation (in the direction of the tangent to the trajectory) of a projectile moving with velocity v through air of normal density is taken to be $vG(v)/C$, where the positive function $G(v)$ depends on v alone and is the

* Presented to the Society, Oct. 25, 1919.

† G. A. Bliss: I. *A method of computing differential corrections for a trajectory*, Journal U. S. Artillery, vol. 51 (1919), p. 445. II. *Differential equations containing arbitrary functions*, these Transactions, vol. 21 (1920), pp. 79–92. III. *Functions of lines in ballistics*, these Transactions, vol. 21 (1920), pp. 93–106.

same for all projectiles, while the ballistic coefficient C depends on the weight and shape of the projectile. The decrease in atmospheric density with increasing altitude y is taken into account by multiplying the previous expression for the retardation by a positive factor $H(y)$ where $H(0) = 1$.*

Referring the projectile to a right-handed system of rectangular coördinates x, y, z with the origin at the muzzle of the gun, the positive x-axis horizontal and directed toward the target, the positive y-axis vertical and directed upward, so that the positive z-axis is directed to the right of the line of fire, the differential equations of the trajectory are†

$$\begin{aligned} x'' &= -Ex', \\ y'' &= -Ey' - g, \\ z'' &= -Ez', \end{aligned} \tag{1}$$

where g is the acceleration of gravity,

$$E = \frac{G(v)H(y)}{C} \tag{2}$$

and

$$v = \sqrt{x'^2 + y'^2 + z'^2}. \tag{3}$$

The initial conditions are for $t = 0$,

$$\begin{aligned} x_0 &= 0, & x_0' &= v_0 \cos\alpha, \\ y_0 &= 0, & y_0' &= v_0 \sin\alpha, \\ z_0 &= 0, & z_0' &= 0, \end{aligned} \tag{4}$$

where v_0 is the initial velocity and α the angle of departure. Since $(z'/x')' = 0$ by (1), it follows from (4) that $z = 0$.

Let us now consider the variations in this trajectory introduced by changes δv_0 in the initial velocity and $\delta\alpha$ in the angle of departure, or by changes in the retardation due to wind, to changes in the functions $G(v)$ and $H(y)$ produced by other atmospheric conditions, and to a change in the ballistic coefficient C. Denote by $G_1(v) = G(v) + \delta G(v)$, $H_1(y) = H(y) + \delta H(y)$, $C_1 = C + \delta C$ the new G- and H-functions and the new ballistic coefficient, and the components of the wind velocity w, which we assume to depend on the altitude y alone, by $w_x = w_x(y)$, $w_y = w_y(y)$, $w_z = w_z(y)$. Let the coördinates of the projectile in the changed trajectory be $\bar{x}, \bar{y}, \bar{z}$ at the time t; the retardation of the projectile, at a given altitude $\bar{y}$, depends only on its velocity V

* In practice, $H(y) = e^{-0.0001036y}$ (lengths being measured in meters and time in seconds), while $G(v)$ is given in tabular form.

† The notations used, which differ in some respects from those of Bliss, are those officially adopted by the Technical Staff.

relative to the atmosphere, the components of which are $\bar{x}' - w_x(\bar{y})$, $\bar{y}' - w_y(\bar{y})$, $\bar{z}' - w_z(\bar{y})$, so that the expression for the retardation now becomes

$$\frac{VG_1(V)H_1(\bar{y})}{C_1} = VE_1. \tag{5}$$

Consequently, the differential equations of the changed t ajectory become

$$\begin{aligned} \bar{x}'' &= -E_1(\bar{x}' - w_x(\bar{y})), \\ \bar{y}'' &= -E_1(\bar{y}' - w_y(\bar{y})) - g, \\ \bar{z}'' &= -E_1(\bar{z}' - w_z(\bar{y})), \end{aligned} \tag{6}$$

with the initial conditions

$$\begin{aligned} \bar{x}_0 &= 0, & \bar{x}_0' &= (v_0 + \delta v_0)\cos(\alpha + \delta\alpha), \\ \bar{y}_0 &= 0, & \bar{y}_0' &= (v_0 + \delta v_0)\sin(\alpha + \delta\alpha), \\ \bar{z}_0 &= 0, & \bar{z}_0' &= 0. \end{aligned} \tag{7}$$

Now write

$$\Delta x = \bar{x} - x, \qquad \Delta y = \bar{y} - y, \qquad \Delta z = \bar{z} - z \tag{8}$$

and subtract equations (1) from (6); we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} (\Delta x)'' &= -E[(\Delta x)' - w_x(y + \Delta y)] \\ &\qquad - (E_1 - E)[x' + (\Delta x)' - w_x(y + \Delta y)], \\ (\Delta y)'' &= -E[(\Delta y)' - w_y(y + \Delta y)] \\ &\qquad - (E_1 - E)[y' + (\Delta y)' - w_y(y + \Delta y)], \\ (\Delta z)'' &= -E[(\Delta z)' - w_z(y + \Delta y)] \\ &\qquad - (E_1 - E)[z' + (\Delta z)' - w_z(y + \Delta y)], \end{aligned} \tag{9}$$

with the initial conditions for $t = 0$

$$\begin{aligned} (\Delta x)_0 &= 0, & (\Delta x)_0' &= (v_0 + \delta v_0)\cos(\alpha + \delta\alpha) - v_0\cos\alpha, \\ (\Delta y)_0 &= 0, & (\Delta y)_0' &= (v_0 + \delta v_0)\sin(\alpha + \delta\alpha) - v_0\sin\alpha, \\ (\Delta z)_0 &= 0, & (\Delta z)_0' &= 0. \end{aligned} \tag{10}$$

We shall assume that, for all values of t, we have

$$|w_x(y + \Delta y) - w_x(y)| < cW_x \cdot \Delta y,$$

where c is a constant and W_x equals the maximum value of $w_x(y)$ along the trajectory,* with similar conditions on w_y and w_z, and moreover that $G(v)$

* This assumption is introduced in order to make the difference $w_x(y + \Delta y) - w_x(y)$ a small quantity of the second order in the expansions below.

and $H(y)$ have bounded derivatives of the second order. We now expand the differences to the right in (9) by Taylor's theorem with remainder term of the second order, and denote by dots any terms containing as factors squares or products of the following quantities: Δx, Δy, Δz, $(\Delta x)'$, $(\Delta y)'$, $(\Delta z)'$, $w_x(y)$, $w_y(y)$, $w_z(y)$, $\delta G(v)$, $\delta G'(v)[\,= G_1'(v) - G'(v)]$, $\delta H(y)$, $\delta H'(y)$ and δC. We thus obtain

$$(11) \qquad (\Delta x)' - w_x(y + \Delta y) = (\Delta x)' - w_x(y) + \cdots$$

and similar expressions in y and z; moreover, writing w_x, w_y, w_z for $w_x(y)$, $w_y(y)$, $w_z(y)$ and observing that $z' = 0$,

$$\begin{aligned} V^2 &= [x' + (\Delta x)' - w_x(y + \Delta y)]^2 \\ &\qquad + [y' + (\Delta y)' - w_y(y + \Delta y)]^2 \\ &\qquad\qquad + [(\Delta z)' - w_z(y + \Delta y)]^2 \\ &= v^2 + 2x'[(\Delta x)' - w_x] + 2y'[(\Delta y)' - w_y] + \cdots; \end{aligned}$$

$$V = v + \frac{x'}{v}[(\Delta x)' - w_x] + \frac{y'}{v}[(\Delta y)' - w_y] + \cdots;$$

$$(12) \qquad \begin{aligned} G_1(V) &= G_1(v) + (V - v)G_1'(v) + \cdots \\ &= G(v) + \delta G(v) + (V - v)G'(v) + \cdots; \\ H_1(\bar{y}) &= H_1(y) + \Delta y \cdot H_1'(y) + \cdots \\ &= H(y) + \delta H(y) + \Delta y \cdot H'(y) + \cdots; \end{aligned}$$

$$\frac{1}{C_1} = \frac{1}{C + \delta C} = \frac{1}{C}\left(1 - \frac{\delta C}{C} + \cdots\right);$$

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{G_1(V)H_1(\bar{y})}{C_1} = \frac{G(v)H(y)}{C}\Bigg[1 &+ \frac{\delta G(v)}{G(v)} + (V - v)\frac{G'(v)}{G(v)} \\ &+ \frac{\delta H(y)}{H(y)} + \Delta y \cdot \frac{H'(y)}{H(y)} - \frac{\delta C}{C} + \cdots\Bigg] \end{aligned}$$

and replacing $V - v$ by (12)

$$(13) \qquad \begin{aligned} E_1 - E = E\Bigg\{&\frac{x'[(\Delta x)' - w_x] + y'[(\Delta y)' - w_y]}{v}\frac{G'(v)}{G(v)} \\ &+ \Delta y\frac{H'(y)}{H(y)} + \frac{\delta G(v)}{G(v)} + \frac{\delta H(y)}{H(y)} - \frac{\delta C}{C} + \cdots\Bigg\}. \end{aligned}$$

We now introduce (11) and (12) in (9), replace Δx, Δy and Δz by ξ, η and ζ and omit all the terms denoted by dots; writing $\xi' = \xi_1$ and $\eta' = \eta_1$, we thus obtain the differential equations

$$
\begin{aligned}
\xi' &= \xi_1 \\
\eta' &= \eta_1 \\
\xi_1' &= -x'E\frac{H'}{H}\eta - E\left(1 + x'^2\frac{G'}{vG}\right)\xi_1 - x'y'E\frac{G'}{vG}\eta_1 \\
&\quad + E\left(1 + x'^2\frac{G'}{vG}\right)w_x + x'y'E\frac{G'}{vG}w_y - x'E\left(\frac{\delta G}{G} + \frac{\delta H}{H} - \frac{\delta C}{C}\right) \\
\eta_1' &= -y'E\frac{H'}{H}\eta - x'y'E\frac{G'}{vG}\xi_1 - E\left(1 + y'^2\frac{G'}{vG}\right)\eta_1 \\
&\quad + x'y'E\frac{G'}{vG}w_x + E\left(1 + y'^2\frac{G'}{vG}\right)w_y - y'E\left(\frac{\delta G}{G} + \frac{\delta H}{H} - \frac{\delta C}{C}\right);
\end{aligned} \tag{14}
$$

$$(15) \quad \zeta'' = -E(\zeta' - w_z),$$

with the initial conditions for $t = 0$, obtained from (7) by expanding and omitting powers of δv_0 and $\delta\alpha$ higher than the first,

$$
\begin{aligned}
&\xi(0) = 0, \\
&\eta(0) = 0, \\
&\xi_1(0) = \cos\alpha\cdot\delta v_0 - v_0\sin\alpha\cdot\delta\alpha = x_0'\frac{\delta v_0}{v_0} - y_0'\,\delta\alpha, \\
&\eta_1(0) = \sin\alpha\cdot\delta v_0 + v_0\cos\alpha\cdot\delta\alpha = y_0'\frac{\delta v_0}{v_0} + x_0'\,\delta\alpha,
\end{aligned} \tag{16}
$$

$$(17) \quad \zeta(0) = 0, \qquad \zeta'(0) = 0.$$

The quantities ξ, η, ζ defined by (14)–(17) are the *differential variations* (of the first order) of x, y and z. This appellation is justified by the following property, for the proof of which see Bliss III:

Let ϵ be any positive quantity, and suppose that δv_0, $\delta\alpha$, δC, w_x, w_y, w_z, δG, $\delta G'$, δH and $\delta H'$ are less than ϵ in absolute value (the last seven at every point of the trajectory). Then the expressions

$$\frac{\Delta x - \xi}{\epsilon}, \quad \frac{(\Delta x)' - \xi_1}{\epsilon}, \quad \frac{\Delta y - \eta}{\epsilon}, \quad \frac{(\Delta y)' - \eta_1}{\epsilon}, \quad \frac{\Delta z - \zeta}{\epsilon}, \quad \frac{(\Delta z)' - \zeta'}{\epsilon}$$

tend toward zero with ϵ, and this uniformly in any time interval $0 \leqq t \leqq t_0$.

In integrating the equations for the differential variations, we begin with (15) and (17), which define the lateral deflection $\zeta(t)$ of the projectile at the time t.

From the first of (1), we have $E = -x''/x'$, and (15) becomes

$$(\zeta'/x')' = Ew_z/x',$$

whence by (17)

$$\zeta' = x'\int_0^t \frac{Ew_z}{x'}\,dt;$$

integrating again, we obtain

$$\zeta(t) = \int_0^t E(\tau)\frac{x(t) - x(\tau)}{x'_\tau} w_z \, d\tau, \tag{18}$$

as is readily verified by differentiation, and in the particular case where $w_z = 0$ for $\tau < t_0$, but $w_z = \text{const.} \neq 0$ for $\tau \geqq t_0$, we have

$$\zeta(t) = w_z \int_{t_0}^t [x(t) - x(\tau)]\, d\left(\frac{1}{x'(\tau)}\right).$$

Integrating by parts, we find the

Deflection due to a constant cross wind w_z from the time t_0 onward

$$\zeta(t) = \left[t - t_0 - \frac{x(t) - x(t_0)}{x'(t_0)}\right] w_z. \tag{19}$$

To obtain expressions for ξ, η, ξ_1 and η_1, we follow Bliss in introducing the system of linear differential equations adjoint to the system (14), namely

$$\begin{aligned}
\lambda' &= 0, \\
\mu' &= \frac{H'}{H} E(x'\nu + y'\rho), \\
\nu' &= -\lambda + E\nu + x'E\frac{G'}{vG}(x'\nu + y'\rho), \\
\rho' &= -\mu + E\rho + y'E\frac{G'}{vG}(x'\nu + y'\rho).
\end{aligned} \tag{20}$$

By the fundamental property of the adjoint system, any solution ξ, η, ξ_1, η_1 of (14) and any solution λ, μ, ν, ρ of (20) are connected by the relation

$$\begin{aligned}
(\xi\lambda + \eta\mu + \xi_1\nu + \eta_1\rho)' = &\left[E\left(1 + x'^2\frac{G'}{vG}\right) w_x + x'y'E\frac{G'}{vG} w_y \right. \\
&\left. - x'E\left(\frac{\delta G}{G} + \frac{\delta H}{H} - \frac{\delta C}{C}\right)\right]\nu \\
&+ \left[x'y'E\frac{G'}{vG} w_x + E\left(1 + y'^2\frac{G'}{vG}\right) w_y \right. \\
&\left. - y'E\left(\frac{\delta G}{G} + \frac{\delta H}{H} - \frac{\delta C}{C}\right)\right]\rho,
\end{aligned}$$

or reducing the right-hand member by means of the last two equations (20)

$$\begin{aligned}
(\xi\lambda + \eta\mu + \xi_1\nu + \eta_1\rho)' = &(\lambda + \nu')w_x + (\mu + \rho')w_y \\
&- E(x'\nu + y'\rho)\left(\frac{\delta G}{G} + \frac{\delta H}{H} - \frac{\delta C}{C}\right).
\end{aligned} \tag{21}$$

Integrating from $t = 0$ to $t = t_0$ and using (16), we find

$$(22)\qquad \begin{aligned}(\xi\lambda + \eta\mu + \xi_1\nu + \eta_1\rho)_{t=t_0} &= (x'\nu + y'\rho)_0\frac{\delta v_0}{v_0} + (x'\rho - y'\nu)_0\,\delta\alpha \\ &+ \int_0^{t_0}(\lambda + \nu')\,w_x\,dt + \int_0^{t_0}(\mu + \rho')\,w_y\,dt \\ &- \int_0^{t_0}E(x'\nu + y'\rho)\left(\frac{\delta G}{G} + \frac{\delta H}{H} - \frac{\delta C}{C}\right)dt.\end{aligned}$$

This formula gives us the value of any linear combination of ξ, η, ξ_1 and η_1 at the time $t = t_0$, provided that we have obtained a solution of (20) taking as initial values for $t = t_0$ the coefficients of the linear combination in question.

2. First integrals of the adjoint system, and reduction of the latter from the fourth to the second order

The existence of two first integrals of (20) is due to the fact that the equations (1) contain neither x nor t explicitly. Since the equations (1) do not contain x explicitly, they are also satisfied by $\bar{x} = x + \epsilon$, $\bar{y} = y$, $\bar{z} = z$, where ϵ is a constant, or in other words, these $\bar{x}$, $\bar{y}$, $\bar{z}$ satisfy the particular equations (6) in which $w_x = w_y = w_z = \delta G = \delta H = \delta C = 0$. We have here $\Delta x = \epsilon$, $\Delta y = (\Delta x)' = (\Delta y)' = 0$, and the first order terms in respect to ϵ in these differences are $\xi = \epsilon$, $\eta = \xi_1 = \eta_1 = 0$. These quantities must satisfy equations (14) (specialized of course to $w_x = \cdots = \delta C = 0$), and consequently (21) specialized in the same way gives for any solution λ, μ, ν, ρ of (20) upon division by ϵ, $(1\cdot\lambda + 0\cdot\mu + 0\cdot\nu + 0\cdot\rho)' = 0$ or $\lambda' = 0$, whence the first integral of (20)

$$(23)\qquad \lambda = \text{const.}$$

This integral might obviously have been read off at once from the first of (20), but the derivation given emphasizes the analogy to the integral which we shall now obtain. Since equations (1) do not contain t explicitly, they are also satisfied by $\bar{x} = x(t + \epsilon)$, $\bar{y} = y(t + \epsilon)$, $\bar{z} = z(t + \epsilon)$ with a constant ϵ, and expanding the differences $\Delta x = x(t + \epsilon) - x(t)$, $(\Delta x)' = x'(t + \epsilon) - x'(t)$, etc., by Taylor's theorem, with remainder term of the second order, we see that the first order terms in ϵ are $\xi = x'(t)\epsilon$, $\eta = y'(t)\epsilon$, $\xi_1 = x''(t)\epsilon$ and $\eta_1 = y''(t)\epsilon$. These must satisfy the system (14) specialized as above, whence it follows as before from (21) that for every solution λ, μ, ν, ρ of (20), we have $(x'\lambda + y'\mu + x''\nu + y''\rho)' = 0$ or

$$(24)\qquad \kappa + x'\lambda + y'\mu + x''\nu + y''\rho = 0 \qquad (\kappa = \text{const.})$$

which is another first integral of (20).* This integral may of course be verified by differentiating (24), substituting the values of λ', μ', ν', ρ' from (20) and

* It seems plausible that in general, that is, without specializing $G(v)$ or $H(y)$, there

using the following formulas, obtained by differentiating (1) and (2),

$$x''' = \left(E^2 - \frac{dE}{dt}\right)x', \qquad y''' = \left(E^2 - \frac{dE}{dt}\right)y' + gE,$$

$$\frac{1}{E}\frac{dE}{dt} = \frac{G'}{G}v' + \frac{H'}{H}y' = -E\frac{vG'}{G} - g\frac{G'}{vG}y' + \frac{H'}{H}y', \tag{25}$$

the last expression following from $vv' = x'\,x'' + y'\,y'' = -Ev^2 - gy'$. To perform the reduction of (20) to the second order by means of the two integrals (23) and (24), we observe that (1) allows us to write the last two equations (20) in the forms

$$\begin{aligned}
(x'\,\nu)' &= -x'\lambda \qquad\qquad + x'^2 E\frac{G'}{vG}(x'\,\nu + y'\,\rho),\\
(y'\,\nu)' &= -y'\lambda - g\nu + x'\,y'E\frac{G'}{vG}(x'\,\nu + y'\,\rho),\\
(x'\rho) &= -x'\mu \qquad\qquad + x'\,y'\,E\frac{G'}{vG}(x'\,\nu + y'\,\rho),\\
(y'\,\rho)' &= -y'\mu - g\rho + y'^2 E\frac{G'}{vG}(x'\,\nu + y'\,\rho),
\end{aligned} \tag{26}$$

whence

$$(x'\,\nu + y'\,\rho)' = -x'\lambda - y'\mu - g\rho + E\,\frac{vG'}{G}\,(x'\,\nu + y'\,\rho).$$

On the other hand, the substitution of x'' and y'' from (1) in (24) gives

$$g\rho = \kappa + x'\lambda + y'\,\mu - E\,(x'\,\nu + y'\,\rho). \tag{27}$$

Introducing the notation

$$h = h(y) = -\frac{H'(y)}{H(y)}, \tag{28}$$

and writing down the second of (20) together with the result of substituting $g\rho$ from (27) in the preceding expression for $(x'\,\nu + y'\,\rho)'$, we find

$$\begin{aligned}
\mu' &= -hE\,(x'\,\nu + y'\,\rho),\\
(x'\,\nu + y'\,\rho)' &= \left(1 + \frac{vG'}{G}\right)E\,(x'\,\nu + y'\,\rho) - 2\,(x'\lambda + y'\,\mu) - \kappa,
\end{aligned} \tag{29}$$

which is the required second order system in μ and $x'\,\nu + y'\,\rho$. Having

exists no further integral of (20) algebraic in λ, μ, ν, ρ, x, y and their derivatives. In special cases, however, new integrals may be found. Thus, for $H(y) = \text{const.}$ (corresponding to an atmosphere of constant density) the second equation (20) gives $\mu = \text{const.}$, while in the case $G(v) = \text{const.}$ (so that the retardation at normal air density is proportional to the velocity) the third equation (20) combined with (23) gives $x'\,\nu + x\lambda = \text{const.}$

integrated (29), we obtain ρ from (27) and ν from the identity:

$$\nu = \frac{1}{x'}(x'\nu + y'\rho) - \frac{y'}{x'}\rho.^* \tag{30}$$

Before proceeding further, we note that (26) gives

$$(x'\rho - y'\nu)' = y'\lambda - x'\mu + g\nu \tag{31}$$

and that, by means of (1) and (25), the second equation (29) may be written in the form

$$\begin{aligned}&[x'E(x'\nu + y'\rho)]' \\ &\quad = -\left(h + g\frac{G'}{vG}\right) x'y'E(x'\nu + y'\rho) - x'E(2x'\lambda + 2y'\mu + \kappa).\end{aligned} \tag{32}$$

3. Formulas for the variations in range and maximum ordinate

In the following, coördinates, velocities and times pertaining to the point of fall (where $y = 0$) will be denoted by the subscript ω, and those pertaining to the summit (where $y' = 0$) by the subscript s.

On the trajectory defined by $x = x(t)$, $y = y(t)$ the *time of flight* t_ω is the positive root of the equation

$$y(t_\omega) = 0, \tag{33}$$

and the *range* x_ω is given by

$$x_\omega = x(t_\omega).^\dagger \tag{34}$$

The *angle of fall* ω is the angle between 0 and $\pi/2$ defined by

$$\tan\omega = -\frac{y'_\omega}{x'_\omega} = -\frac{y'(t_\omega)}{x'(t_\omega)}. \tag{35}$$

The time t_s required to reach the summit of the trajectory is determined by the equation

$$y'(t_s) = 0 \tag{36}$$

and the *maximum ordinate* is then

$$y_s = y(t_s). \tag{37}$$

In the changed trajectory defined by $\bar{x} = x(t) + \Delta x(t)$, $\bar{y} = y(t) + \Delta y(t)$,

* The system (29) is adapted to the theoretical purposes of the present paper. For the application of the method to the actual computation of differential variations, it is preferable to integrate numerically the differential equation of the second order in μ obtained by eliminating $x'\nu + y'\rho$ in (29). A detailed exposition of this method will be published elsewhere.

† For a proof of the existence of a unique positive root of (33), under the sole assumption that $E > 0$ everywhere, see T. H. Gronwall, *Qualitative properties of the ballistic trajectory*, Annals of Mathematics, ser. II, vol. 21 (1920), pp. 44–65.

$\bar{z} = \Delta z(t)$, the time of flight $t_\omega + \Delta t_\omega$ is given by

$$(38) \qquad y(t_\omega + \Delta t_\omega) + \Delta y(t_\omega + \Delta t_\omega) = 0.$$

Now $y(t_\omega + \Delta t_\omega) = y(t_\omega) + y'(t_1)\Delta t_\omega$, where t_1 lies between t_ω and $t_\omega + \Delta t_\omega$, and since $y(t_\omega) = 0$, (25) gives $\Delta t_\omega = -\Delta y(t_\omega + \Delta t_\omega)/y'(t_1)$. Hence Δt_ω is of the order of magnitude of Δy, that is of η, since the difference $\Delta y - \eta$ is of higher order of magnitude than η; consequently $\Delta y(t_\omega + \Delta t_\omega) = \eta(t_\omega) +$ (a term of higher order of magnitude), and the first order term in Δt_ω, or the *differential variation* δt_ω *in time of flight* is given by

$$(39) \qquad \delta t_\omega = -\frac{\eta(t_\omega)}{y'(t_\omega)}.^*$$

The change in range Δx_ω is given by

$$\begin{aligned} x_\omega + \Delta x_\omega &= x(t_\omega + \Delta t_\omega) + \Delta x(t_\omega + \Delta t_\omega) \\ &= x(t_\omega) + x'(t_\omega)\Delta t_\omega + \xi(t_\omega) \\ &\quad + [\tfrac{1}{2}x''(t_1)(\Delta t_\omega)^2 + \Delta x(t_\omega + \Delta t_\omega) - \xi(t_\omega)] \end{aligned}$$

with t_1 between t_ω and $t_\omega + \Delta t_\omega$, the bracketed terms being of higher order of magnitude than the first. Retaining only terms of the first order of magnitude, we find the *differential variation* δx_ω *in range* to be $x'(t_\omega)\delta t_\omega + \xi(t_\omega)$, or substituting δt_ω from (39) and using (35)

$$(40) \qquad \delta x_\omega = \xi(t_\omega) + \eta(t_\omega)\cot\omega.$$

The change in maximum ordinate Δy_s is given by

$$y_s + \Delta y_s = y(t_s + \Delta t_s) + \Delta y(t_s + \Delta t_s),$$

and since $y'(t_s) = 0$, the differences $y(t_s + \Delta t_s) - y(t_s)$ and $\Delta y(t_s + \Delta t_s) - \eta(t_s)$ are of higher order of magnitude than the first, so that we obtain for the *differential variation in maximum ordinate*

$$(41) \qquad \delta y_s = \eta(t_s).$$

After these preliminaries, let us return to the remark at the end of section 2. By (40), δx_ω equals the linear combination $\xi\cdot 1 + \eta\cdot\cot\omega + \xi_1\cdot 0 + \eta_1\cdot 0$ at $t = t_\omega$, and to obtain δx_ω, we have therefore to integrate (20) with the initial conditions

$$(42) \qquad \lambda = 1, \quad \mu = \cot\omega, \quad \nu = 0, \quad \rho = 0 \quad \text{for} \quad t = t_\omega.$$

Substitution of $t = t_\omega$ in (23) therefore gives $\lambda = 1$, and in (24),

$$\kappa + x'_\omega + y'_\omega \cot\omega = 0$$

* For the general theorem of which this determination of δt_ω is a special application, see Bliss II, pp. 90–92.

or $\kappa = 0$ by (35). Consequently, for the determination of the *differential variations in range*, the system (29) becomes

$$\mu' = -hE(x'\nu + y'\rho),$$

$$(43) \qquad (x'\nu + y'\rho)' = \left(1 + \frac{vG'}{G}\right)E(x'\nu + y'\rho) - 2(x' + y'\mu)$$

with the initial conditions

$$(44) \qquad \mu = \cot\omega, \quad x'\nu + y'\rho = 0 \qquad \text{for} \qquad t = t_\omega.$$

Moreover, (27) becomes

$$(45) \qquad g\rho = x' + y'\mu - E(x'\nu + y'\rho),$$

and (22), making $t_0 = t_\omega$ and using (40)

$$(46) \qquad \begin{aligned} \delta x_\omega = {} & (x'\nu + y'\rho)_0 \frac{\delta v_0}{v_0} + (x'\rho - y'\nu)_0\,\delta\alpha \\ & + \int_0^{t_\omega} (1 + \nu')\,w_x\,dt + \int_0^{t_\omega} (\mu + \rho')\,w_y\,dt \\ & - \int_0^{t_\omega} E(x'\nu + y'\rho)\left(\frac{\delta G}{G} + \frac{\delta H}{H} - \frac{\delta C}{C}\right)dt. \end{aligned}$$

Considering separately the various terms to the right in (46), we find the following expressions for:

Range variation due to change δv_0 in initial velocity:

$$(47) \qquad \delta x_\omega = (x'\nu + y'\rho)_0 \frac{\delta v_0}{v_0}.$$

Range variation due to change $\delta\alpha$ in angle of departure:

$$(48) \qquad \delta x_\omega = (x'\rho - y'\nu)_0\,\delta\alpha.$$

Range variation due to a following wind w_x:

$$\delta x_\omega = \int_0^{t_\omega} (1 + \nu')\,w_x\,dt,$$

and when $w_x = 0$ for $t < t_0$, $w_x = \text{const.} \neq 0$ for $t \geqq t_0$:

Range variation due to a constant following wind w_x from the time t_0 onward:

$$(49) \qquad \delta x_\omega = [t_\omega - t_0 - \nu(t_0)]\,w_x$$

(since $\nu(t_\omega) = 0$ by (42)), and similarly

Range variation due to a constant vertical wind w_y from the time t_0 onward:

$$(50) \qquad \delta x_\omega = \left[\int_{t_0}^{t_\omega} \mu\,dt - \rho(t_0)\right] w_y.$$

Range variation due to a change $\delta H(y)$ in $H(y)$:

$$\delta x_\omega = -\int_0^{t_\omega} E(x'\nu + y'\rho)\frac{\delta H}{H}\,dt. \tag{51}$$

Range variation due to a change δC in the ballistic coefficient:

$$\delta x_\omega = \frac{\delta C}{C}\int_0^{t_\omega} E(x'\nu + y'\rho)\,dt. \tag{52}$$

Passing to the variations in maximum ordinate, (41) shows that δy_s equals the linear combination $\xi\cdot 0 + \eta\cdot 1 + \xi_1\cdot 0 + \eta_1\cdot 0$ at $t = t_s$, and we have to integrate (20) with the initial conditions

$$\lambda = 0, \qquad \mu = 1, \qquad \nu = 0, \qquad \rho = 0 \qquad \text{for} \qquad t = t_s.\text{*} \tag{53}$$

Substitution of $t = t_s$ in (23) therefore gives $\lambda = 0$, and in (24), $\kappa = 0$, since $y'(t_s) = 0$. Consequently, for the determination of the *differential variations in maximum ordinate,* the system (29) becomes

$$\begin{aligned} \mu' &= -hE(x'\nu + y'\rho), \\ (x'\nu + y'\rho)' &= \left(1 + \frac{vG'}{G}\right)E(x'\nu + y'\rho) - 2y'\mu, \end{aligned} \tag{54}$$

with the initial conditions

$$\mu = 1, \qquad x'\nu + y'\rho = 0 \qquad \text{for} \qquad t = t_s. \tag{55}$$

Moreover, (27) becomes

$$g\rho = y'\mu - E(x'\nu + y'\rho), \tag{56}$$

and (22), making $t_0 = t_s$ and using (41)

$$\begin{aligned} \delta y_s = {} & (x'\nu + y'\rho)_0\frac{\delta v_0}{v_0} + (x'\rho - y'\nu)_0\,\delta\alpha \\ & + \int_0^{t_s} \nu' w_x\,dt + \int_0^{t_s} (\mu + \rho')\,w_y\,dt \\ & - \int_0^{t_s} E(x'\nu + y'\rho)\left(\frac{\delta G}{G} + \frac{\delta H}{H} - \frac{\delta C}{C}\right)dt. \end{aligned} \tag{57}$$

Separating the terms to the right, we find for the
Maximum ordinate variation due to change δv_0 in initial velocity:

$$\delta y_s = (x'\nu + y'\rho)_0\frac{\delta v_0}{v_0}, \tag{58}$$

* The two sets of solutions of (20) belonging to range and maximum ordinate variations are thus entirely different, since they satisfy different initial conditions (42) and (53). This should be constantly borne in mind in the following, as we have refrained from distinguishing the two sets by subscripts in order to simplify the typography.

Maximum ordinate variation due to change $\delta\alpha$ in angle of departure:

(59) $$\delta y_s = (x' \rho - y' \nu)_0 \, \delta\alpha,$$

Maximum ordinate variation due to a constant following wind w_x from the time t_0 onward:

(60) $$\delta y_s = - \nu (t_0) w_x,$$

Maximum ordinate variation due to a constant vertical wind w_y from the time t_0 onward:

(61) $$\delta y_s = \left[\int_{t_0}^{t_s} \mu dt - \rho (t_0) \right] w_y,$$

Maximum ordinate variation due to a change $\delta H (y)$ in $H (y)$:

(62) $$\delta y_s = - \int_0^{t_s} E (x' \nu + y' \rho) \frac{\delta H}{H} dt,$$

Maximum ordinate variation due to a change δC in the ballistic coefficient:

(63) $$\delta y_s = \frac{\delta C}{C} \int_0^{t_s} E (x' \nu + y' \rho) dt.$$

4. Qualitative properties of the differential variations in range

In addition to assuming $G (v) > 0$, $H (y) > 0$ as we have done from the outset in accordance with the physical significance of these functions, we shall introduce, in this and the following sections, the two hypotheses

(64) $$G' (v) > 0, \qquad h (y) \geqq 0,$$

the latter being equivalent to $H' (y) \leqq 0$ by (28). Physically, this means that the retardation at normal density increases more rapidly than the first power of the velocity, and that the density of the atmosphere nowhere increases with the altitude.

The fundamental qualitative property of the range variations is expressed by the inequality

(65) $$x' \nu + y' \rho > 0 \qquad \text{for} \qquad 0 \leqq t < t_\omega .$$

To prove this, we write

$$\psi = \int_t^{t_\omega} \left(1 + \frac{vG'}{G} \right) E dt,$$

and obtain from the second equation (43) and (44)

(66) $$e^\psi (x' \nu + y' \rho) = 2 \int_0^{t_\omega} e^\psi (x' + y' \mu) dt.$$

Since $(x' + y' \mu)' = - E (x' + y' \mu) - g\mu - y' \mu'$ by (1), and since at $t = t_\omega$

we have $x' + y'\mu = 0$ by (35), $\mu = \cot\omega$ and $\mu' = 0$ by (43) and (44), it follows that $(x' + y'\mu)' = -g\cot\omega$ at $t = t_\omega$, so that $(x' + y'\mu)' < 0$ for $t_\omega - \epsilon \leqq t \leqq t_\omega$, where ϵ is sufficiently small. Thus $x' + y'\mu$ decreases toward zero in this interval, and (66) shows that $x'\nu + y'\rho$ is positive for $t_\omega - \epsilon < t < t_\omega$, or more generally, in the interior of any time interval ending at $t = t_\omega$, and in which $x' + y'\mu \geqq 0$. Now suppose that $x'\nu + y'\rho$ is not always positive in the interval $0 \leqq t < t_\omega$, then there exists a zero t_1 nearest to t_ω so that $x'\nu + y'\rho = 0$ for $t = t_1$ but $x'\nu + y'\rho > 0$ for $t_1 < t < t_\omega$, and from what precedes it is seen that we must have

$$x' + y'\mu < 0 \qquad \text{for} \qquad t = t_1. \tag{67}$$

The first of (43) shows that $\mu' \leqq 0$ for $t_1 < t < t_\omega$, and from (44), we consequently obtain

$$\mu \geqq \cot\omega \tag{68}$$

for $t_1 < t < t_\omega$ at least. Since $x' > 0$ for all values of t,* we conclude from (67) and (68) that $y'(t_1) < 0$, that is, the hypothetical zero of $x'\nu + y'\rho$ must occur, if at all, on the falling branch of the trajectory. For $t_1 < t < t_\omega$, or more generally, as long as $y' < 0$ and $x'\nu + y'\rho > 0$, it follows from the third of (26), the fundamental hypothesis (64), and (68) that

$$(x'\rho)' < -x'\mu \leqq -x'\cot\omega,$$

and integrating this inequality from t to t_ω and observing that $\rho = 0$ for $t = t_\omega$ by (42), we find

$$x'\rho > (x_\omega - x)\cot\omega \tag{69}$$

for $t_1 \leqq t < t_\omega$. But from (45) we obtain $g\rho = x' + y'\mu$ for $t = t_1$, since $x'\nu + y'\rho = 0$ for this value of t, and in consequence of (67), ρ must be negative at $t = t_1$, while (69) shows that ρ is positive for this value of t, and this contradiction proves (65).

Moreover, it is now seen that (68) is true for $0 \leqq t < t_\omega$, the equality sign to be taken only when h is identically zero, while (69) holds at least when $y' \leqq 0$, that is, at least for $t_s \leqq t < t_\omega$.

From the first of (43) and (65), we have $\mu' \leqq 0$ for $0 \leqq t < t_\omega$, the equality sign to be taken only when $h = 0$, and consequently, μ decreases toward $\cot\omega$ as t increases from 0 to t_ω (except when h vanishes identically, μ being then equal to $\cot\omega$).

We shall now prove, moreover, that $x' + y'\mu$ *is positive and decreases to zero when* t *increases from* 0 *to* t_ω. On the rising branch of the trajectory where $y' > 0$, this is evident, since x' and y' are positive and decrease with t increasing,

* This follows at once from $x_0' = v_0 \cos\alpha > 0$, since (1) gives $x' = x_0' e^{\int_0^t E\,dt}$.

while μ is positive and decreases or remains constant. If $x' + y'\mu < 0$ anywhere on the falling branch, we must have $x' + y'\mu = 0$ and $(x' + y'\mu)' \geqq 0$ at some point on the falling branch, since it was shown that $x' + y'\mu > 0$ sufficiently near $t = t_\omega$. But at such a point $-g\mu - y'\mu' \geqq 0$ on account of

$$(x' + y'\mu)' = -E(x' + y'\mu) - g\mu - y'\mu',$$

and this is impossible since $\mu > 0$, $y' \leqq 0$, $\mu' \leqq 0$. Consequently $x' + y'\mu > 0$ on the falling branch also (except at the point of fall, where it vanishes), and if $x' + y'\mu$ does not decrease steadily on the falling branch, there must be a minimum, distinct from the point of fall, and at the minimum point, $(x' + y'\mu)' = 0$ or $-E(x' + y'\mu) - g\mu - y'\mu' = 0$, which is impossible, since the first two terms are negative, and the third negative or zero.

It is now possible to establish a number of qualitative properties of the differential variations in range.

Since, by (65), $x'\nu + y'\rho > 0$ at $t = 0$, it follows from (47) that

The range increases when the initial velocity is increased.

Integrating the second of (43) from t to t_ω and using (44), we find

$$x'\nu + y'\rho = \int_t^{t_\omega} \left[2(x' + y'\mu) - \left(1 + \frac{vG'}{G}\right) E(x'\nu + y'\rho) \right] dt,$$

or integrating the term in $y'\mu$ by parts and using the first of (43),

$$x'\nu + y'\rho = 2(x_\omega - x) - 2y\mu - \int_t^{t_\omega} \left(1 + \frac{vG'}{G} - 2hy\right) E(x'\nu + y'\rho)\, dt. \tag{70}$$

If we assume that

$$2hy < 1 + \frac{vG'}{G} \tag{71}$$

over the entire trajectory, the last term in (70) is negative by (65), and making $t = 0$ so that $x = y = 0$, we find $(x'\nu + y'\rho)_0 < 2x_\omega$ or by (47), assuming δv_0 to be positive,

$$\frac{\delta x_\omega}{x_\omega} < 2\frac{\delta v_0}{v_0}, \tag{72}$$

that is

For low trajectories, where y is so small that (71) *is satisfied everywhere, the range increases less rapidly than the square of the initial velocity.*

When $h = 0$, i.e., the atmospheric density is constant, (71) is always true since $G' > 0$; in this particular case, the theorem was proved in an entirely different manner by Petrini.*

* H. Petrini, *Om ballistiska egenskaper hos kastbanor*, Arkiv för Matematik och Fysik (Stockholm), vol. 7 (1912), pp. 1–29.

In actual practice, we have $vG'/G > 0.51$ and $h = 0.0001036$, so that (71) is satisfied whenever the maximum ordinate does not exceed 7500 meters. In vacuum, the well-known formula $x_\omega = v_0^2 \sin 2\alpha/g$ shows that the range increases exactly as the square of the velocity.

From the first of (26) it follows, since $\lambda = 1$ by (42) and $x'\nu + y'\rho > 0$ by (65), that $(x'\nu + x)' > 0$, so that $x'\nu + x$ increases with t, and since $\nu = 0$ at $t = t_\omega$ by (42), we find

$$\nu < \frac{x_\omega - x}{x'} \qquad \text{for} \qquad 0 \leqq t < t_\omega. \tag{73}$$

Now (31) gives, by means of (68) and (73), since $\lambda = 1$ and $x' > 0$,

$$(x'\rho - y'\nu)' < y' - x' \cot\omega + g\frac{x_\omega - x}{x'};$$

integrating from t to t_ω and observing (42), we find

$$-(x'\rho - y'\nu) < \int_t^{t_\omega}\left[-x'\cot\omega + y' + g\frac{x_\omega - x}{x'}\right]dt$$

$$= \left[-x\cot\omega - (x_\omega - x)\frac{y'}{x'}\right]_t^{t_\omega},$$

the integration in finite terms being easily verified by means of (1), and finally

$$x'\rho - y'\nu > (x_\omega - x)\left(\cot\omega - \frac{y'}{x'}\right). \tag{74}$$

Making $t = 0$, and comparing to (48), we obtain for the range variation due to an increase in the angle of departure

$$\delta x_\omega > x_\omega(\cot\omega - \tan\alpha)\,\delta\alpha, \tag{75}$$

so that $\delta x_\omega > 0$ when $\tan\alpha \leqq \cot\omega$ or $\alpha + \omega \leqq \pi/2$; from the well-known fact that $\alpha < \omega$, it follows that

An increase in the angle of departure increases the range when the sum of the angles of departure and fall does not exceed 90°, *or more particularly, when the angle of fall does not exceed* 45°.

This theorem gives no information as to whether the maximum range at a given initial velocity occurs at an angle of departure equal to 45° (which is the case in vacuum), or smaller or greater. In actual practice, all three cases are found to occur, according to the values of the initial velocity and the ballistic coefficient.* From (73), we obtain

$$t_\omega - t_0 - \nu(t_0) > t_\omega - t_0 - \frac{x_\omega - x(t_0)}{x'(t_0)},$$

* A theoretical investigation of the special case of a homogeneous atmosphere ($h = 0$) and a retardation proportional to the nth power of the velocity is given by Petrini, l. c.

and making $w_x = w_z$ in (49) and (19), it follows that
The increase in range due to a constant following wind from the time t_0 onward is greater than the deflection at the point of fall due to a constant cross wind of the same velocity from the same time t_0 onward.
Using (65) in (52), we see that
An increase in the ballistic coefficient increases the range.
Similarly it is shown that an increase in atmospheric density ($\delta H > 0$ everywhere on the trajectory) or in retardation ($\delta G > 0$) will decrease the range.

5. Qualitative properties of the differential variations in maximum ordinate*

The fundamental inequality for the maximum ordinate variations is

$$x'\,\nu + y'\,\rho > 0 \qquad \text{for} \qquad 0 \leqq t < t_s, \tag{76}$$

and its proof is simpler than in the case of the range, since now y' does not change its sign in the time interval considered. Writing

$$\psi = \int_t^{t_s} \left(1 + \frac{vG'}{G}\right) E dt,$$

we obtain from the second equation (54) and (55)

$$e^{\psi}(x'\,\nu + y'\,\rho) = 2\int_t^{t_s} e^{\psi}\, y'\,\mu dt \tag{77}$$

so that, since $y' > 0$ on the rising branch of the trajectory, and $\mu = 1$ at $t = t_s$, μ is positive, and consequently also $x'\,\nu + y'\,\rho$ by (77), for t less than but sufficiently close to t_s. If (76) is not true everywhere, there consequently exists a t_1 such that $x'\,\nu + y'\,\rho$ is zero at t_1, but positive for $t_1 < t < t_s$. Then the first of (54) shows that μ decreases or is constant as t increases from t_1 to t_s so that $\mu \geqq 1$ for $t_1 < t < t_s$ by (55), and (77) therefore gives a positive $x'\,\nu + y'\,\rho$ at $t = t_1$, contrary to our assumption. Thus (76) is proved. From the first of (54) and (76) it follows that $\mu' \leqq 0$ so that μ decreases steadily toward unity as t increases from 0 to t_s (or is constant $= 1$ when h vanishes identically). Using (76), the first of (26) shows, λ being zero by (53)

* The following will explain why no discussion is given of the properties of the variations in time of flight, which are more important from a practical point of view than those in maximum ordinate. It follows from (39) that the specialization of (29) proper to the time of flight variations is $\kappa = 1$, $\lambda = 0$, $\mu = -1/y'_\omega$, $\nu = \rho = 0$ at $t = t_\omega$. The non-homogeneous terms in the second equation (29) then become $-(2y'\mu + 1)$ taking the values $+1$ at t_ω and -1 at t_s. On account of this change of sign, the method used in the text to prove $x'\,\nu + y'\,\rho$ to be of constant sign is inapplicable. Moreover, numerical computation shows the behavior of the time of flight variations to be so much more complicated and irregular than in the cases of range and maximum ordinate, that it appears difficult even to formulate conjectures in respect to their qualitative properties.

and (23), that $(x'\nu)' > 0$, so that $x'\nu$ increases toward the value zero at t_s, and consequently

(78) $$\nu < 0 \quad \text{for} \quad 0 \leqq t < t_s.$$

Since $y' > 0$, the comparison of (76) and (78) shows that

(79) $$\rho > 0 \quad \text{for} \quad 0 \leqq t < t_s,$$

and the first of (54), (56) and (79) now give the inequality

$$hy'\mu + \mu' = g\rho h \geqq 0,$$

or by (28) $(\mu/H(y))' \geqq 0$ whence, observing that $\mu = 1$ at t_s,

(80) $$\mu \leqq \frac{H(y)}{H(y_s)},$$

the equality sign holding only when h is identically zero, or $H(y) = \text{const.}$ From (54) and (55), we find

$$x'\nu + y'\rho = \int_t^{t_s}\left[2y'\mu - \left(1 + \frac{vG'}{G}\right)E(x'\nu + y'\rho)\right]dt$$
$$= 2(y_s - y\mu) - \int_t^{t_s}\left(1 + \frac{vG'}{G} - 2hy\right)E(x'\nu + y'\rho)\,dt$$

and from (76) and (71) it is seen that for $t = 0$ we have $0 < (x'\nu + y'\rho)_0 < 2y_s$, so that (58) gives for an increase δv_0 in initial velocity

(81) $$0 < \frac{\delta y_s}{y_s} < 2\frac{\delta v_0}{v_0}$$

or

For an increase in the initial velocity, the maximum ordinate increases, and for low trajectories, where y is so small that (71) is satisfied everywhere, the maximum ordinate increases less rapidly than the square of the initial velocity.

When $h = 0$, the latter part of the theorem is always true. Comparing (31) and (78), it is seen that

$$(x'\rho - y'\nu)' < -x'\mu \leqq -x'$$

since $\mu \geqq 1$, whence integrating from t to t_s

(82) $$x'\rho - y'\nu > x_s - x$$

and making $t = 0$ and using (59):

An increase in the angle of departure increases the maximum ordinate, the increase satisfying the inequality

(83) $$\delta y_s > x_s\,\delta\alpha.$$

The trajectory being concave downward, we evidently have $y_s < x_s \tan\alpha$, whence (83) gives

$$\frac{\delta y_s}{y_s} > \cot\alpha\,\delta\alpha = \frac{\delta(\sin\alpha)}{\sin\alpha}$$

so that

The maximum ordinate increases more rapidly than the sine of the angle of departure.

Incidentally, multiplying (76) by y', (82) by x' and adding, we find

$$\rho > \frac{x'(x_s - x)}{x'^2 + y'^2} = \frac{x'(x_s - x)}{v^2}. \tag{84}$$

From (78) and (60) it is seen that

The maximum ordinate is increased by a constant following wind.

In the third of (26), all five factors in the second term to the right are positive, whence $(x'\rho)' > -x'\mu$ and integrating from t_0 to t_s, where $t_0 < t_s$, we find

$$x'(t_0)\rho(t_0) < \int_{t_0}^{t_s} x'\mu dt,$$

since $\rho(t_s) = 0$ by (53), and consequently, since $\mu \geqq 1$,

$$\int_{t_0}^{t_s}\mu dt - \rho(t_0) > \int_{t_0}^{t_s}\mu\left[1 - \frac{x'}{x'(t_0)}\right]dt \geqq \int_{t_0}^{t_s}\left[1 - \frac{x'}{x'(t_0)}\right]dt$$
$$= t_s - t_0 - \frac{x_s - x(t_0)}{x'(t_0)}.$$

Comparing (61) and (19), we therefore see that

The increase in maximum ordinate due to a constant vertical wind from the time t_0 onward is greater than the deflection at the summit due to a constant cross wind of the same velocity from the same time t_0 onward.

Using (76) in (63), we find that

An increase in the ballistic coefficient increases the maximum ordinate.

Similarly, it is shown that an increase in atmospheric density ($\delta H > 0$ everywhere on the trajectory) or in retardation ($\delta G > 0$) will decrease the maximum ordinate. We shall finally show that

The increase in maximum ordinate due to an increase in the ballistic coefficient satisfies the inequality

$$\delta y_s > (2y_s - x_s\tan\alpha)\frac{\delta C}{C}, \tag{85}$$

which is interesting inasmuch as the right hand member equals the (approximate) expression for δy_s given by the Siacci theory.*

* See for instance Charbonnier, *Balistique extérieure rationnelle*, vol. 1 (Paris, Doin, 1907), p. 349.

To prove this, we observe that in (32), where now $\kappa = \lambda = 0$, we have $y' > 0$, $x'\nu + y'\rho > 0$ and $\mu \geqq 1$, whence

$$[x'E(x'\nu + y'\rho)]' < -2Ex'y'$$

and integrating from t to t_s,

$$x'E(x'\nu + y'\rho) > \int_t^{t_s} 2Ex'y'\,dt = \Big[-x'y' - gx\Big]_t^{t_s} = x'y' - g(x_s - x),$$

the integration in finite terms being readily verified by means of (1). Consequently

$$E(x'\nu + y'\rho) > y' - g\frac{x_s - x}{x'},$$

$$\int_0^{t_s} E(x'\nu + y'\rho)\,dt > \int_0^{t_s}\left(y' - g\frac{x_s - x}{x'}\right)dt$$

$$= \left[2y + (x_s - x)\frac{y'}{x'}\right]_0^{t_s} = 2y_s - x_s \tan\alpha,$$

and the substitution of this in (63) gives (85).

6. A special integrable case, and some conjectures regarding the range variations in the general case

The case to be considered is that of an atmosphere of constant density and a retardation proportional to the velocity, so that $h = 0$, $G' = 0$. Here λ, μ, ν, ρ may be expressed rationally in terms of x, y, x' and y'. Considering the range variations only, for the sake of brevity, we have $\lambda = 1$, the first equation (43) becomes $\mu' = 0$, so that $\mu = \cot\omega$ by (44), while the first and third of (26) become $(x'\nu)' = -x'$ and $(x'\rho)' = -x'\cot\omega$, so that, by (42),

$$\nu = \frac{x_\omega - x}{x'}, \qquad \rho = \frac{x_\omega - x}{x'}\cot\omega.$$

From (45), it is now seen that

$$E(x'\nu + y'\rho) = x' + y'\cot\omega - g\cot\omega\frac{x_\omega - x}{x'},$$

whence

$$\int_0^{t_\omega} E(x'\nu + y'\rho)\,dt = \left[x + 2y\cot\omega + \cot\omega\,(x_\omega - x)\frac{y'}{x'}\right]_0^{t_\omega}$$

$$= x_\omega(1 - \cot\omega\tan\alpha).$$

Consequently, formulas (47) to (52) become

$$\frac{\delta x_\omega}{x_\omega} = \left(1 + \frac{\tan\alpha}{\tan\omega}\right)\frac{\delta v_0}{v_0} \qquad \text{(initial velocity),}$$

$$\frac{\delta x_\omega}{x_\omega} = (\cot\omega - \tan\alpha)\,\delta\alpha \qquad \text{(angle of departure),}$$

$$\delta x_\omega = \left[t_\omega - t_0 - \frac{x_\omega - x(t_0)}{x'(t_0)}\right] w_x \qquad \text{(following wind),}$$

$$\delta x_\omega = \left[t_\omega - t_0 - \frac{x_\omega - x(t_0)}{x'(t_0)}\right] \cot\omega \cdot w_y \qquad \text{(vertical wind),}$$

$$\frac{\delta x_\omega}{x_\omega} = \left(1 - \frac{\tan\alpha}{\tan\omega}\right)\frac{\delta C}{C} \qquad \text{(ballistic coefficient).}$$

These expressions lead to the following conjectures in the general case, which have been verified on a large number of computed trajectories, and which it would be very interesting to prove even under assumptions on $G(v)$ and $H(y)$ stronger than (64):

(*a*) The range variation due to an increase in initial velocity satisfies the inequality

$$\frac{\delta x_\omega}{x_\omega} < \left(1 + \frac{\tan\alpha}{\tan\omega}\right)\frac{\delta v_0}{v_0}$$

(with or without the restriction (71)?).

(*b*) For $0 \leqq t < t_\omega$, ν is positive, so that, by (49), the range increase due to a constant following wind is less than what would be obtained by a rigid displacement of the original trajectory with the velocity of the wind during the time interval from t_0 to t_ω.

(*c*) The range increase due to a constant vertical wind from the time t_0 onward is less than cot ω times the deflection at the point of fall due to a constant cross wind with the same velocity and from the same time t_0 onward.

(*d*) The range variation due to an increase in the ballistic coefficient satisfies the inequality

$$\frac{\delta x_\omega}{x_\omega} > \left(1 - \frac{\tan\alpha}{\tan\omega}\right)\frac{\delta C}{C},$$

where the expression to the right is the one occurring in the Siacci theory (Charbonnier, l.c.).

TECHNICAL STAFF,
OFFICE OF THE CHIEF OF ORDNANCE.

AN EXPANSION THEOREM FOR A SYSTEM OF LINEAR DIFFERENTIAL EQUATIONS OF THE FIRST ORDER *

BY

WALLIE ABRAHAM HURWITZ

Introduction. The object of the present paper is to make a first step in the extension of the well-known Sturm-Liouville expansion theorem for a differential equation with one parameter to the case of systems of equations. A certain type of system of two equations of the first order in two unknowns will be considered. The essential facts deduced may be summarized in the following

THEOREM. *The values of* λ *for which the system*

$$u'(x) - [a(x) + \lambda]\, v(x) = 0,$$
$$v'(x) + [b(x) + \lambda]\, u(x) = 0,$$
$$\alpha_0\, u(0) + \beta_0\, v(0) = 0,$$
$$\alpha_1\, u(1) + \beta_1\, v(1) = 0,$$

(where $a(x), b(x)$ *are continuous functions,* $0 \leqq x \leqq 1$, *and* $|\alpha_0| + |\beta_0| \neq 0$, $|\alpha_1| + |\beta_1| \neq 0$*) possesses non-trivial solutions, are all real, and infinite in number, extending to infinity positively and negatively and having no finite limit-point. For each such value* λ_n *there is one and only one solution* $[u_n, v_n]$; *the set of solutions corresponding to all values of* λ *is orthogonal and may be normalized, these terms being used to characterize the relations:*

$$\int_0^1 [u_m u_n + v_m v_n]\, dx = \begin{cases} 0, & m \neq n, \\ 1, & m = n. \end{cases}$$

If $f(x)$, $g(x)$ *are any two functions having continuous second derivatives and satisfying the conditions*

$$\alpha_0 f(0) + \beta_0\, g(0) = 0, \qquad \alpha_1 f(1) + \beta_1\, g(1) = 0,$$

then

$$f(x) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{+\infty} c_n\, u_n(x),$$

$$g(x) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{+\infty} c_n\, v_n(x),$$

* Presented to the Society, Sept. 5, 1917.

where

$$c_n = \int_0^1 [fu_n + gv_n]\, dx,$$

the convergence being uniform.

The method of treatment follows closely that of Kneser* on a single equation of the second order. A further extension of the present results to a more complicated form of boundary condition has been made by Dr. C. C. Camp.

It may be noted that the several systems of integral equations used are in each case of the Volterra type; solutions could therefore be obtained directly in the form of uniformly convergent infinite series without any use of the notation for the resolvent system to the kernel system; this notation serves only to abbreviate the presentation.

We deal with the homogeneous system of differential equations

$$(1) \qquad u' - (a+\lambda)v = 0, \qquad v' + (b+\lambda)u = 0,$$

and the corresponding non-homogeneous system

$$(2) \qquad u' - (a+\lambda)v = \varphi, \qquad v' + (b+\lambda)u = \psi.$$

Here the independent variable x ranges over a finite real interval, which for convenience we take to be the interval $0 \leqq x \leqq 1$; λ is a parameter which may have any real or complex value. The functions a, b, φ, ψ are real and depend on x alone; they are continuous, and the first two have continuous first derivatives. The unknown functions u, v depend on x and λ; the notation u', v' denotes differentiation with respect to x. Throughout the paper the variable λ will be included in or omitted from the notation for function depending on it, as seems convenient.

A function-pair $[u, v]$, such that u, v have continuous first derivatives and satisfy (1) or (2), will be called a *solution;* the product of a solution $[u, v]$ by a constant c is to mean the solution $[cu, cv]$. The solution $[0, 0]$ of (1) is a *trivial solution.*

We consider also the boundary conditions

$$(B_0) \qquad \alpha_0 u(0) + \beta_0 v(0) = 0,$$

$$(B_1) \qquad \alpha_1 u(1) + \beta_1 v(1) = 0,$$

where $\alpha_0, \beta_0, \alpha_1, \beta_1$ are real constants such that

$$|\alpha_0| + |\beta_0| \neq 0, \qquad |\alpha_1| + |\beta_1| \neq 0.$$

In view of the latter conditions, there will be no loss of generality in writing, when this is convenient,

$$(3) \qquad \alpha_0 = \cos\theta_0, \qquad \beta_0 = \sin\theta_0; \qquad \alpha_1 = \cos\theta_1, \qquad \beta_1 = \sin\theta_1.$$

* Mathematische Annalen, vol. 58 (1904), p. 81; vol. 60 (1905), p. 402.

We shall use the notation $F = O(\varphi(\lambda))$, where F is a function of λ with or without x and other real variables, to denote that there exist positive real constants Λ, K such that $|F| \leqq K|\varphi|$ when $|\lambda| > \Lambda$; thus if F depends on other variables besides λ, the notation involves the idea of uniformity. A similar notation will be used with a real (positive or negative) integer n in place of λ.

The homogeneous system. THEOREM I. *The system* (1) *with initial conditions*

$$u(0) = \alpha, \qquad v(0) = \beta, \tag{4}$$

where α, β are any constants, possesses for each λ one and only one solution $[u, v]$; this solution is of the form

$$\begin{aligned} u(x) &= \alpha \cos \xi + \beta \sin \xi + O\left(\frac{1}{\lambda}\right), \\ v(x) &= \beta \cos \xi - \alpha \sin \xi + O\left(\frac{1}{\lambda}\right), \end{aligned} \tag{5}$$

where

$$\xi = \lambda x + \tfrac{1}{2}\int_0^x [a(s) + b(s)]\, ds. \tag{6}$$

Write

$$\begin{aligned} u(x) &= U(x) + \left(1 + \frac{a}{2\lambda}\right)(\alpha \cos \xi + \beta \sin \xi), \\ v(x) &= V(x) + \left(1 + \frac{b}{2\lambda}\right)(\beta \cos \xi - \alpha \sin \xi). \end{aligned} \tag{7}$$

By substitution in (1) we find that

$$\begin{aligned} U' - (a + \lambda)V &= \frac{P}{\lambda}, \\ V' + (b + \lambda)U &= \frac{Q}{\lambda}, \end{aligned} \tag{8}$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} P(x, \lambda) &= \frac{-\alpha a(b - a) - 2\beta a'}{4} \sin \xi + \frac{\beta a(b - a) - 2\alpha a'}{4} \cos \xi, \\ Q(x, \lambda) &= \frac{\alpha b(b - a) - 2\beta b'}{4} \cos \xi + \frac{\beta b(b - a) + 2\alpha b'}{4} \sin \xi, \end{aligned} \tag{9}$$

or

$$\begin{aligned} P(x, \lambda) &= \frac{a(b - a)}{4}(\beta \cos \xi - \alpha \sin \xi) - \frac{a'}{2}(\alpha \cos \xi + \beta \sin \xi), \\ Q(x, \lambda) &= \frac{b(b - a)}{4}(\alpha \cos \xi + \beta \sin \xi) - \frac{b'}{2}(\beta \cos \xi - \alpha \sin \xi), \end{aligned} \tag{10}$$

and that

$$U(0) = -\frac{\alpha a(0)}{2\lambda}, \qquad V(0) = -\frac{\beta b(0)}{2\lambda}. \tag{11}$$

If we multiply equations (8) respectively by $\cos\lambda x$, $-\sin\lambda x$, add, and integrate from 0 to x; and similarly multiply by $\sin\lambda x$, $\cos\lambda x$, add, and integrate, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} &U\cos\lambda x - V\sin\lambda x \\ &\qquad = \int_0^x [a(s)V(s)\cos\lambda s + b(s)U(s)\sin\lambda s]\,ds + \frac{M}{\lambda}, \\ &U\sin\lambda x + V\cos\lambda x \\ &\qquad = \int_0^x [a(s)V(s)\sin\lambda s - b(s)U(s)\cos\lambda s]\,ds + \frac{N}{\lambda}, \end{aligned} \tag{12}$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} M(x,\lambda) &= -\tfrac{1}{2}\alpha a(0) + \int_0^x [P(s)\cos\lambda s - Q(s)\sin\lambda s]\,ds, \\ N(x,\lambda) &= -\tfrac{1}{2}\beta b(0) + \int_0^x [P(s)\sin\lambda s + Q(s)\cos\lambda s]\,ds. \end{aligned} \tag{13}$$

Now solving (12) algebraically for the U, V appearing on the left, we have

$$\begin{aligned} U &= \frac{F}{\lambda} + \int_0^x [-b(s)U(s)\sin\lambda(x-s) \\ &\qquad\qquad + a(s)V(s)\cos\lambda(x-s)]\,ds, \\ V &= \frac{G}{\lambda} + \int_0^x [-b(s)U(s)\cos\lambda(x-s) \\ &\qquad\qquad - a(s)V(s)\sin\lambda(x-s)]\,ds, \end{aligned} \tag{14}$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} F(x,\lambda) &= M\cos\lambda x + N\sin\lambda x, \\ G(x,\lambda) &= -M\sin\lambda x + N\cos\lambda x. \end{aligned} \tag{15}$$

This is a system of integral equations of Volterra type for U, V:

$$\begin{aligned} U(x) &= \frac{F(x)}{\lambda} + \int_0^x [K_{11}(x,s)U(s) + K_{12}(x,s)V(s)]\,ds, \\ V(x) &= \frac{G(x)}{\lambda} + \int_0^x [K_{21}(x,s)U(s) + K_{22}(x,s)V(s)]\,ds, \end{aligned} \tag{16}$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} K_{11}(x,s,\lambda) &= -b(s)\sin\lambda(x-s), \\ K_{12}(x,s,\lambda) &= a(s)\cos\lambda(x-s), \\ K_{21}(x,s,\lambda) &= -b(s)\cos\lambda(x-s), \\ K_{22}(x,s,\lambda) &= -a(s)\sin\lambda(x-s). \end{aligned} \tag{17}$$

To the kernel system K_{ij} there exists a resolvent system Q_{ij}. The system (16) has the unique solution

$$
(18)\qquad
\begin{aligned}
U(x) &= \frac{F(x)}{\lambda} + \frac{1}{\lambda}\int_0^x [Q_{11}(x,s)F(s) + Q_{12}(x,s)G(s)]\,ds,\\
V(x) &= \frac{G(x)}{\lambda} + \frac{1}{\lambda}\int_0^x [Q_{21}(x,s)F(s) + Q_{22}(x,s)G(s)]\,ds.
\end{aligned}
$$

By (9),

$$P = O(1), \qquad Q = O(1);$$

hence by (13),

$$M = O(1), \qquad N = O(1);$$

hence by (15),

$$F = O(1), \qquad G = O(1);$$

and obviously by (17),

$$K_{ij} = O(1).$$

If we write out the infinite series for the functions Q_{ij} of the resolvent system, analogous to the usual series of iterated kernels of a single kernel, it is clear that

$$(19)\qquad Q_{ij} = O(1).$$

Thus, finally, by (18), we see that

$$U = O\left(\frac{1}{\lambda}\right), \qquad V = O\left(\frac{1}{\lambda}\right);$$

and this result substituted in (7) yields (5), and completes the proof of the theorem.

Furthermore, we have, from (9),

$$\partial P/\partial\lambda = O(1), \qquad \partial Q/\partial\lambda = O(1);$$

from (13),

$$\partial M/\partial\lambda = O(1), \qquad \partial N/\partial\lambda = O(1);$$

from (15),

$$\partial F/\partial\lambda = O(1), \qquad \partial G/\partial\lambda = O(1);$$

and from (17),

$$\partial K_{ij}/\partial\lambda = O(1).$$

Differentiating (16), we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
\frac{\partial U(x)}{\partial\lambda} &= \frac{S(x)}{\lambda} + \int_0^x \left[K_{11}(x,s)\frac{\partial U(s)}{\partial\lambda} + K_{12}(x,s)\frac{\partial V(s)}{\partial\lambda}\right] ds,\\
\frac{\partial V(x)}{\partial\lambda} &= \frac{T(x)}{\lambda} + \int_0^x \left[K_{21}(x,s)\frac{\partial U(s)}{\partial\lambda} + K_{22}(x,s)\frac{\partial V(s)}{\partial\lambda}\right] ds,
\end{aligned}
$$

where

$$
\begin{aligned}
S(x) &= \frac{\partial F(x)}{\partial\lambda} - \frac{F(x)}{\lambda} + \int_0^x \left[\frac{\partial K_{11}(x,s)}{\partial\lambda} U(s) + \frac{\partial K_{12}(x,s)}{\partial\lambda} V(s)\right] ds,\\
T(x) &= \frac{\partial G(x)}{\partial\lambda} - \frac{G(x)}{\lambda} + \int_0^x \left[\frac{\partial K_{21}(x,s)}{\partial\lambda} U(s) + \frac{\partial K_{22}(x,s)}{\partial\lambda} V(s)\right] ds.
\end{aligned}
$$

Evidently $S = O(1)$, $T = O(1)$. Solving the integral system for $\partial U/\partial\lambda$, $\partial V/\partial\lambda$, we have

$$\frac{\partial U(x)}{\partial\lambda} = \frac{S(x)}{\lambda} + \frac{1}{\lambda}\int_0^x [Q_{11}(x, s)S(s) + Q_{12}(x, s)T(s)]\,ds,$$

$$\frac{\partial V(x)}{\partial\lambda} = \frac{T(x)}{\lambda} + \frac{1}{\lambda}\int_0^x [Q_{21}(x, s)S(s) + Q_{22}(x, s)T(s)]\,ds.$$

Hence

$$\frac{\partial U}{\partial\lambda} = O\left(\frac{1}{\lambda}\right), \qquad \frac{\partial V}{\partial\lambda} = O\left(\frac{1}{\lambda}\right).$$

Combining this result with (7), we have

THEOREM II. *If* $[u, v]$ *represents the solution of the system* (1), (4), *then*

$$\text{(20)}\qquad \begin{aligned} \frac{\partial u(x)}{\partial\lambda} &= x(\beta\cos\xi - \alpha\sin\xi) + O\left(\frac{1}{\lambda}\right), \\ \frac{\partial v(x)}{\partial\lambda} &= -x(\alpha\cos\xi + \beta\sin\xi) + O\left(\frac{1}{\lambda}\right). \end{aligned}$$

Turning now to the system (1), (B_0), (B_1), we seek first a solution of (1), (B_0). Two such solutions for a single value of λ are clearly linearly dependent; it will therefore suffice to choose a single non-trivial solution. Such a solution is obtained by using with (1) the initial conditions

$$u(0) = -\beta_0 = -\sin\theta_0, \qquad v(0) = \alpha_0 = \cos\theta_0.$$

By Theorems I, II we have the

LEMMA I. *For every value of* λ *a solution of* (1), (B_0) *exists, and satisfies the conditions*:

$$\text{(21)}\qquad \begin{aligned} u(x) &= \sin(\xi - \theta_0) + O\left(\frac{1}{\lambda}\right), \\ v(x) &= \cos(\xi - \theta_0) + O\left(\frac{1}{\lambda}\right), \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{(22)}\qquad \begin{aligned} \frac{\partial u(x)}{\partial\lambda} &= x\cos(\xi - \theta_0) + O\left(\frac{1}{\lambda}\right), \\ \frac{\partial v(x)}{\partial\lambda} &= -x\sin(\xi - \theta_0) + O\left(\frac{1}{\lambda}\right). \end{aligned}$$

Any other solution of (1), (B_0) *for a fixed value of* λ *is a constant multiple of this one.*

It is now clear that a non-trivial solution of (1), (B_0), (B_1) will exist only in case the solution just found for (1), (B_0) satisfies also (B_1); this gives a

condition on λ. We define

$$D(\lambda) = \alpha_1 u(1) + \beta_1 v(1) = u(1)\cos\theta_1 + v(1)\sin\theta_1,$$

and note that

$$\frac{dD(\lambda)}{d\lambda} = \frac{\partial u(1)}{\partial\lambda}\cos\theta_1 + \frac{\partial v(1)}{\partial\lambda}\sin\theta_1.$$

Then the condition for a solution of (1), (B_0) to satisfy also (B_1) is that

$$D(\lambda) = 0. \tag{23}$$

If we now evaluate $D(\lambda)$, $dD(\lambda)/d\lambda$ by use of (21), we find that

$$D(\lambda) = \sin(\xi_1 + \theta_1 - \theta_0) + O\left(\frac{1}{\lambda}\right), \tag{24}$$

$$\frac{dD(\lambda)}{d\lambda} = \cos(\xi_1 + \theta_1 - \theta_0) + O\left(\frac{1}{\lambda}\right), \tag{25}$$

where

$$\xi_1 = \xi(1) = \lambda + \tfrac{1}{2}\int_0^1 [a(s) + b(s)]\,ds, \tag{26}$$

or, if we write $\frac{1}{2}\int_0^1 [a(s) + b(s)]\,ds + \theta_1 - \theta_0 = -\theta$,

$$D(\lambda) = \sin(\lambda - \theta) + O\left(\frac{1}{\lambda}\right), \tag{27}$$

$$\frac{dD(\lambda)}{d\lambda} = \cos(\lambda - \theta) + O\left(\frac{1}{\lambda}\right). \tag{28}$$

In order to investigate the roots of (23), we first prove

LEMMA II. *If* $[u_1, v_1]$, $[u_2, v_2]$ *represent solutions of* (1), (B_0), (B_1) *for two distinct values* λ_1, λ_2 *respectively of* λ, *then*

$$\int_0^1 [u_1 u_2 + v_1 v_2]\,dx = 0.$$

If we multiply the equations

$$\begin{aligned} u_1' - (a + \lambda_1) v_1 &= 0, \\ v_1' + (b + \lambda_1) u_1 &= 0, \\ u_2' - (a + \lambda_2) v_2 &= 0, \\ v_2' + (b + \lambda_2) u_2 &= 0, \end{aligned}$$

respectively by v_2, $-u_2$, $-v_1$, u_1, and add, we have

$$\frac{d}{dx}[u_1 v_2 - u_2 v_1] = (\lambda_1 - \lambda_2)[u_1 u_2 + v_1 v_2];$$

hence

$$(\lambda_1 - \lambda_2) \int_0^1 [u_1 u_2 + v_1 v_2]\, dx = [u_1 v_2 - u_2 v_1]_0^1.$$

But since both solutions satisfy (B_0), (B_1), the expression on the right vanishes. Therefore if $\lambda_1 \neq \lambda_2$, the integral on the left must vanish.

From this result we deduce

LEMMA III. *$D(\lambda)$ has only real roots.*

If λ is a root, to which corresponds the non-trivial solution $[u, v]$, then we see by inspection of (1), (B_0), (B_1) that $\bar{\lambda}$ must also be a root with the solution $[\bar{u}, \bar{v}]$. If $\lambda, \bar{\lambda}$ were distinct, then by Lemma II,

$$\int_0^1 [u\bar{u} + v\bar{v}]\, dx = 0;$$

but this would imply that $u = v = 0$, and the solution would be trivial. Hence $\lambda = \bar{\lambda}$, and λ must be real.

We wish to show also that no root of $D(\lambda)$ can be double. For a double root we should have simultaneously

$$\begin{aligned} D(\lambda) &= \alpha_1 u(1) + \beta_1 v(1) = 0, \\ \frac{dD(\lambda)}{d\lambda} &= \alpha_1 \frac{\partial u(1)}{\partial \lambda} + \beta_1 \frac{\partial v(1)}{\partial \lambda} = 0. \end{aligned} \tag{29}$$

Hence it would follow that

$$u(1)\frac{\partial v(1)}{\partial \lambda} - v(1)\frac{\partial u(1)}{\partial \lambda} = 0. \tag{30}$$

If however we multiply the equations

$$\begin{aligned} u' - (a + \lambda)\, v &= 0, \\ v' + (b + \lambda)\, u &= 0, \\ \left(\frac{\partial u}{\partial \lambda}\right)' - (a + \lambda)\frac{\partial v}{\partial \lambda} &= v, \\ \left(\frac{\partial v}{\partial \lambda}\right)' + (b + \lambda)\frac{\partial u}{\partial \lambda} &= -u, \end{aligned} \tag{31}$$

(of which the last pair are obvious consequences of the first pair) respectively by $\partial v/\partial \lambda$, $-\partial u/\partial \lambda$, $-v$, u, add, and integrate from 0 to 1, we find

$$\left[u\frac{\partial v}{\partial \lambda} - v\frac{\partial u}{\partial \lambda}\right]_0^1 = -\int_0^1 [u^2 + v^2]\, dx,$$

which, since $\partial u/\partial \lambda$ and $\partial v/\partial \lambda$ vanish at $x = 0$, reduces to

$$-\int_0^1 [u^2 + v^2]\, dx = u(1)\,\frac{\partial v(1)}{\partial \lambda} - v(1)\frac{\partial u(1)}{\partial \lambda} = 0,$$

by (30). But from this it would follow that u and v are identically zero, which is untrue. Hence

LEMMA IV. *$D(\lambda)$ has only simple roots.*

In order to determine the location of the real roots, we divide the whole range of real values of λ into two sets of intervals:

$$I_n : |\lambda - \theta - n\pi| \leqq \frac{\pi}{4},$$

$$J_n : |\lambda - \theta - (n + \tfrac{1}{2})\pi| \leqq \frac{\pi}{4},$$

where n is any integer. At the beginning of any interval I_n,

$$\lambda = \theta + (n - \tfrac{1}{4})\pi,$$

and by (27),

$$D(\lambda) = \sin (n - \tfrac{1}{4})\pi + O\left(\frac{1}{\lambda}\right)$$

$$= \frac{(-1)^{n-1}}{\sqrt{2}} + O\left(\frac{1}{\lambda}\right) \cdot$$

Similarly at the end of an interval I_n, $\lambda = \theta + (n + \tfrac{1}{4})\pi$, and

$$D(\lambda) = \frac{(-1)^n}{\sqrt{2}} + O\left(\frac{1}{\lambda}\right) \cdot$$

For sufficiently large $|\lambda|$, therefore, $D(\lambda)$ has opposite signs at the beginning and end of I_n, and hence vanishes at least once inside I_n.

In any interval J_n, $\lambda = \theta + (n + \tfrac{1}{2})\pi + \delta$, $|\delta| \leqq \pi/4$, and

$$D(\lambda) = (-1)^n \cos \delta + O\left(\frac{1}{\lambda}\right) \cdot$$

But since $|\cos \delta| \geqq 1/\sqrt{2}$, it follows that for sufficiently large $|\lambda|$, $D(\lambda) \neq 0$ throughout J_n.

An argument analogous to the preceding shows that for sufficiently large $|\lambda|$, $dD(\lambda)/d\lambda \neq 0$ throughout I_n. Therefore $D(\lambda)$ cannot have more than one root in each I_n.

Having now proved that for sufficiently large $|\lambda|$, $D(\lambda)$ has one and only one root in each I_n and none outside I_n, we may write for the large roots

$$(32) \qquad \lambda_n = \theta + n\pi + \epsilon_n, \qquad |\epsilon_n| \leqq \frac{\pi}{4} \cdot$$

This expression, substituted in (27), gives

$$0 = (-1)^n \sin \epsilon_n + O\left(\frac{1}{n}\right),$$

or

$$\sin \epsilon_n = O\left(\frac{1}{n}\right).$$

Since the choice among the angles ϵ_n corresponding to a given $\sin \epsilon_n$ is here uniquely determined by the condition $|\epsilon_n| \leqq \pi/4$, we have

$$\epsilon_n = O\left(\frac{1}{n}\right),$$

and finally from (32),

$$\lambda_n = \theta + n\pi + O\left(\frac{1}{n}\right). \tag{33}$$

By using this formula for λ_n in (21), we find for the solution $[u_n, v_n]$ corresponding to the root λ_n of $D(\lambda)$,

$$u_n(x) = \sin(\xi_n - \theta_0) + O\left(\frac{1}{n}\right),$$

$$v_n(x) = \cos(\xi_n - \theta_0) + O\left(\frac{1}{n}\right),$$

where ξ_n is the value of ξ for $\lambda = \lambda_n$.

We have seen that two solutions $[u_m, v_m]$, $[u_n, v_n]$ are in a general sense *orthogonal;* that is,

$$\int_0^1 [u_m u_n + v_m v_n]\, dx = 0.$$

We now seek to have each solution *normalized:*

$$\int_0^1 [u_n^2 + v_n^2]\, dx = 1.$$

This can be accomplished by dividing u_n and v_n by the constant

$$\sqrt{\int_0^1 [u_n^2 + v_n^2]\, dx}.$$

But it is clear from the expressions just found for u_n, v_n, that

$$\int_0^1 [u_n^2 + v_n^2]\, dx = 1 + O\left(\frac{1}{n}\right);$$

hence normalization leaves the asymptotic forms for $u_n(x)$, $v_n(x)$ unchanged. We shall continue to use the same notation for the normalized solutions.

We collect the preceding results as follows:

THEOREM III. *The roots of $D(\lambda)$ are real and simple. For sufficiently large values of $|\lambda|$ they have the asymptotic expression*

$$\lambda_n = \theta + n\pi + O\left(\frac{1}{n}\right), \tag{33}$$

n being an integer. To each root corresponds one and (except for multiplication by a constant) only one solution $[u_n, v_n]$ of (1), (B_0), (B_1). These solutions may be taken to form a normal orthogonal set

$$\int_0^1 [u_m u_n + v_m v_n]\,dx = \begin{cases} 0, & m \neq n, \\ 1, & m = n; \end{cases} \tag{34}$$

and have the asymptotic expressions

$$u_n(x) = \sin(\xi_n - \theta_0) + O\left(\frac{1}{n}\right),$$

$$v_n(x) = \cos(\xi_n - \theta_0) + O\left(\frac{1}{n}\right).$$

The non-homogeneous system. Consider now the system (2). Let $[u_0, v_0]$ denote a solution satisfying the initial conditions

$$u_0(0) = 0, \qquad v_0(0) = 0. \tag{35}$$

We call $[u_1, v_1]$ the previously discussed solution of (1) satisfying the initial conditions

$$u_1(0) = -\sin\theta_0, \qquad v_1(0) = \cos\theta_0, \tag{36}$$

and introduce a second solution $[u_2, v_2]$ of (1) satisfying the initial conditions

$$u_2(0) = \cos\theta_0, \qquad v_2(0) = \sin\theta_0. \tag{37}$$

Each of the six functions $u_0, v_0, u_1, v_1, u_2, v_2$ is an integral function of the complex variable λ. The solutions $[u_1, v_1]$, $[u_2, v_2]$ are linearly independent, since

$$\begin{vmatrix} u_1(0) & v_1(0) \\ u_2(0) & v_2(0) \end{vmatrix} = -1 \neq 0.$$

Recalling the notation

$$D(\lambda) = u_1(1)\cos\theta_1 + v_1(1)\sin\theta_1, \tag{38}$$

we also write

$$D_0(\lambda) = u_0(1)\cos\theta_1 + v_0(1)\sin\theta_1. \tag{39}$$

Both $D(\lambda)$ and $D_0(\lambda)$ are clearly integral functions of λ.

Any solution of (2) can be written in the form

$$\begin{aligned} u &= u_0 + c_1 u_1 + c_2 u_2, \\ v &= v_0 + c_1 v_1 + c_2 v_2, \end{aligned} \tag{40}$$

by proper choice of the numbers c_1, c_2, which are independent of x, but vary with λ. We seek to choose c_1, c_2 so as to satisfy (B_0), (B_1). For (B_0) we need merely take $c_2 = 0$. Placing this value in (40) and writing out

(B_2), we have

(41) $$D_0(\lambda) + c_1 D(\lambda) = 0.$$

In case $D(\lambda) \neq 0$, we see that

$$c_1 = -\frac{D_0(\lambda)}{D(\lambda)},$$

and hence find for (2), (B_0), (B_1) the unique solution

(42) $$u = u_0 - \frac{D_0(\lambda)}{D_1(\lambda)} u_1, \qquad v = v_0 - \frac{D_0(\lambda)}{D_1(\lambda)} v_1.$$

Thus we may state

LEMMA V. *If $D(\lambda) \neq 0$, the system (2), (B_0), (B_1) has one and only one solution $[u, v]$. Throughout any region in which $D(\lambda) \neq 0$, u and v are analytic functions of λ.*

If however λ has one of the values λ_n, so that $D(\lambda) = 0$, then (37) cannot be satisfied for any c_1 unless also $D_0(\lambda) = 0$, and is satisfied for every c_1 in case $D_0(\lambda) = 0$. Let us examine the meaning of the simultaneous vanishing of $D(\lambda)$, $D_0(\lambda)$. Writing out (2) for $[u_0, v_0]$ and (1) for $[u_1, v_1]$, multiplying the four equations in order by $v_1, -u_1, -v_0, u_0$, adding, and integrating from 0 to 1, we have

$$u_0(1)v_1(1) - v_0(1)u_1(1) = \int_0^1 [\varphi v_1 - \psi u_1]\, dx.$$

But if

$$D(\lambda) = u_1(1)\cos\theta_1 + v_1(1)\sin\theta_1 = 0,$$

$$D_0(\lambda) = u_0(1)\cos\theta_1 + v_0(1)\sin\theta_1 = 0,$$

then

$$u_0(1)v_1(1) - v_0(1)u_1(1) = 0,$$

and hence

$$\int_0^1 [\varphi v_1 - \psi u_1]\, dx = 0,$$

or, since $[u_1, v_1]$ here represents the solution $[u_n, v_n]$ corresponding to the root λ_n of $D(\lambda)$,

(43) $$\int_0^1 [\varphi v_n - \psi u_n]\, dx = 0.$$

Conversely, if this condition is satisfied and $D(\lambda) = 0$, then $D_0(\lambda) = 0$. Thus when $D(\lambda) = 0$, (43) is a necessary and sufficient condition that also $D_0(\lambda) = 0$.

If then (43) holds, the system (2), (B_0), (B_1) still has solutions for $\lambda = \lambda_n$,

which are of the form

$$u = u_0 + c_1 u_n,$$
$$v = v_0 + c_1 v_n,$$

for any c_1. We inquire whether a particular c_1 can be chosen in such a way that the solution $[u, v]$ of (2), (B_0), (B_1) for neighboring values of λ shall join analytically to the solution for λ_n. Since u_0, v_0, u_1, v_1 are analytic for all λ, we see from (42) that it is sufficient that the quotient $D_0(\lambda)/D(\lambda)$ approach a limit as λ approaches λ_n. This will always occur:

$$\lim_{\lambda \to \lambda_n} \frac{D_0(\lambda)}{D(\lambda)} = \frac{D_0'(\lambda_n)}{D'(\lambda_n)},$$

since $D'(\lambda_n) \neq 0$ by Lemma IV. The resulting $[u, v]$, being analytic in λ near λ_n and continuous at λ_n, will be analytic also at λ_n. Thus we have

LEMMA VI. *For $\lambda = \lambda_n$, the system (2), (B_0), (B_1) has solutions if and only if*

$$\int_0^1 [\varphi v_n - \psi u_n]\, dx = 0.$$

If this condition is satisfied, a solution $[u, v]$ can be selected which joins with the unique solution for neighboring values of λ in such a way that u and v are analytic throughout a region surrounding λ_n.

From this result we have further

LEMMA VII. *If for every λ_n,*

$$\int_0^1 [\varphi v_n - \psi u_n]\, dx = 0,$$

then the system (2), (B_0), (B_1) possesses a solution $[u, v]$ such that u and v are integral functions of λ.

Let us now interpret further the meaning of the condition just obtained. Suppose that (43) holds for each λ_n. Then the solution $[u, v]$ of (2), (B_0), (B_1), being analytic for all λ by Lemma VII, can be written

$$u = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \lambda^n y_n(x), \qquad v = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \lambda^n z_n(x), \tag{44}$$

where the series converge, uniformly in x, for all λ in the complex plane and for $0 \leqq x \leqq 1$. It is easily seen that y_n, z_n are in all cases real. Substituting in (2) and equating coefficients, we have

$$y_n' - a z_n = z_{n-1}, \qquad z_n' + b y_n = -y_{n-1} \tag{45}$$

for all values of n, provided we agree to define

$$y_{-1} = -\psi, \qquad z_{-1} = \varphi. \tag{46}$$

Write (45) and a similar pair of equations obtained by putting m for n; multiply these four equations respectively by z_m, $-y_m$, $-z_n$, y_n, add, and integrate from 0 to 1; we have

$$\int_0^1 [y_{m-1}\, y_n + z_{m-1}\, z_n]\, dx = \int_0^1 (y_m\, y_{n-1} + z_m\, z_{n-1}]\, dx.$$

By repeated application of this result it is seen that if we define

$$W_r = \int_0^1 [y_0\, y_r + z_0\, z_r]\, dx, \tag{47}$$

then

$$\int_0^1 [y_m\, y_n + z_m\, z_n]\, dx = W_{m+n}. \tag{48}$$

Integrating the inequality

$$\begin{vmatrix} y_{m+1}(x) & y_{m+1}(\xi) \\ y_{m-1}(x) & y_{m-1}(\xi) \end{vmatrix}^2 + \begin{vmatrix} y_{m+1}(x) & z_{m+1}(\xi) \\ y_{m-1}(x) & z_{m-1}(\xi) \end{vmatrix}^2 + \begin{vmatrix} z_{m+1}(x) & y_{m+1}(\xi) \\ z_{m-1}(x) & y_{m-1}(\xi) \end{vmatrix}^2 + \begin{vmatrix} z_{m+1}(x) & z_{m+1}(\xi) \\ z_{m-1}(x) & z_{m-1}(\xi) \end{vmatrix}^2 \geqq 0$$

with respect to both x and ξ between the limits 0 and 1, we have

$$W_{2m-2}\, W_{2m+2} - W_{2m}^2 \geqq 0. \tag{49}$$

If we multiply (44) respectively by y_0, z_0 and integrate from 0 to 1, we have the series

$$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} W_n\, \lambda^n,$$

convergent for all λ. Omitting alternate terms, we have the series

$$W_0 + \lambda^2 W_2 + \lambda^4 W_4 + \cdots, \tag{50}$$

also (since the convergence of a power series is absolute) convergent for all λ.

By (48),

$$W_{2m} = \int_0^1 [y_m^2 + z_m^2]\, dx \geqq 0.$$

We shall show that some $W_{2m} = 0$. If $W_{2m} \neq 0$ for all m, then by (48), $W_{2m} > 0$, and by (49),

$$\frac{W_{2m-2}}{W_{2m}} \geqq \frac{W_{2m}}{W_{2m+2}}.$$

Hence

$$\frac{W_0}{W_2} \geqq \frac{W_2}{W_4} \geqq \frac{W_4}{W_6} \geqq \cdots .$$

Therefore the series (50) could not converge for $\lambda = \sqrt{W_0/W_2}$, since for that value the terms of (50) would be respectively greater numerically than the terms of the series

$$W_0 + W_0 + W_0 + \cdots .$$

Thus, for some m, $W_{2m} = 0$; that is, by (48),

$$\int_0^1 [y_m^2 + z_m^2]\, dx = 0,$$

whence

$$y_m = z_m = 0;$$

and, by repeated applications of (45),

$$\begin{aligned} y_{m-1} &= z_{m-1} = 0, \\ y_{m-2} &= z_{m-2} = 0, \\ &\cdots\cdots \\ y_0 &= z_0 \quad = 0, \\ \varphi &= \psi \quad = 0. \end{aligned}$$

Thus we have

THEOREM IV. *If $\varphi(x)$, $\psi(x)$ are continuous functions such that for every solution $[u_n, v_n]$ of* (1), (B_0), (B_1),

$$\int_0^1 [\varphi v_n - \psi u_n]\, dx = 0,$$

then

$$\varphi = \psi = 0.$$

Expansion of an arbitrary function-pair. Let $f(x)$, $g(x)$ be a pair of continuous functions, and let there exist the simultaneous expansions

$$(51) \qquad \begin{aligned} f(x) &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{+\infty} c_n u_n(x), \\ g(x) &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{+\infty} c_n v_n(x). \end{aligned}$$

If both series converge uniformly, then the coefficients can be determined by multiplying respectively by $u_n(x)$, $v_n(x)$, adding, and integrating from 0 to 1. In view of the normal orthogonality of the set of $[u_n, v_n]$, this process gives

$$(52) \qquad c_n = \int_0^1 [f u_n + g v_n]\, dx.$$

If term-wise differentiation of (51) is permissible, it is clear that f, g must satisfy also the boundary conditions

$$(C_0) \qquad \alpha_0 f(0) + \beta_0 g(0) = 0,$$

$$(C_1) \qquad \alpha_1 f(1) + \beta_1 g(1) = 0.$$

We now proceed to investigate the convergence of the two series (51), in which the coefficients are determined by (52) in terms of two given functions $f(x)$, $g(x)$. It is assumed that f and g have continuous second derivatives. Using (1), and integrating by parts twice, we have

$$\begin{aligned}\int_0^1 f u_n\,dx &= -\int_0^1 \frac{f v_n'}{\lambda_n + b}\,dx \\ &= \left[-\frac{f v_n}{\lambda_n + b}\right]_0^1 + \int_0^1 v_n \frac{d}{dx}\frac{f}{\lambda_n + b}\,dx \\ &= \left[-\frac{f v_n}{\lambda_n + b}\right]_0^1 + \int_0^1 \frac{u_n'}{\lambda_n + a}\frac{d}{dx}\frac{f}{\lambda_n + b}\,dx \\ &= \left[-\frac{f v_n}{\lambda_n + b} + \frac{u_n}{\lambda_n + a}\frac{d}{dx}\frac{f}{\lambda_n + b}\right]_0^1 \\ &\qquad - \int_0^1 u_n \frac{d}{dx}\left\{\frac{1}{\lambda_n + a}\frac{d}{dx}\frac{f}{\lambda_n + b}\right\}dx.\end{aligned}$$

Similarly,

$$\begin{aligned}\int_0^1 g v_n\,dx &= \left[\frac{g u_n}{\lambda_n + a} + \frac{v_n}{\lambda_n + b}\frac{d}{dx}\frac{g}{\lambda_n + a}\right]_0^1 \\ &\qquad - \int_0^1 v_n \frac{d}{dx}\left\{\frac{1}{\lambda_n + b}\frac{d}{dx}\frac{g}{\lambda_n + a}\right\}dx.\end{aligned}$$

By direct computation, we find that

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{1}{\lambda_n + a}\frac{d}{dx}\frac{f}{\lambda_n + b} &= O\left(\frac{1}{\lambda_n^2}\right) = O\left(\frac{1}{n^2}\right), \\ \frac{1}{\lambda_n + b}\frac{d}{dx}\frac{g}{\lambda_n + a} &= O\left(\frac{1}{\lambda_n^2}\right) = O\left(\frac{1}{n^2}\right), \\ \frac{d}{dx}\left\{\frac{1}{\lambda_n + a}\frac{d}{dx}\frac{f}{\lambda_n + b}\right\} &= O\left(\frac{1}{\lambda_n^2}\right) = O\left(\frac{1}{n^2}\right), \\ \frac{d}{dx}\left\{\frac{1}{\lambda_n + b}\frac{d}{dx}\frac{g}{\lambda_n + a}\right\} &= O\left(\frac{1}{\lambda_n^2}\right) = O\left(\frac{1}{n^2}\right).\end{aligned}$$

Hence

$$\begin{aligned}\int_0^1 f u_n\,dx &= \left[-\frac{f v_n}{\lambda_n + b}\right]_0^1 + O\left(\frac{1}{n^2}\right), \\ \int_0^1 g v_n\,dx &= \left[\quad \frac{g u_n}{\lambda_n + a}\right]_0^1 + O\left(\frac{1}{n^2}\right),\end{aligned}$$

and

$$c_n = \left[-\frac{fv_n}{\lambda_n + b} + \frac{gu_n}{\lambda_n + a} \right]_0^1 + O\left(\frac{1}{n^2}\right).$$

But

$$-\frac{fv_n}{\lambda_n + b} + \frac{gu_n}{\lambda_n + a} = \frac{-fv_n + gu_n}{\lambda_n} + O\left(\frac{1}{n^2}\right),$$

and

$$c_n = \left[-\frac{fv_n + gu_n}{\lambda_n} \right]_0^1 + O\left(\frac{1}{n^2}\right).$$

In case f, g satisfy (C_0), (C_1),

$$[-fv_n + gu_n]_0^1 = 0,$$

and

$$c_n = O\left(\frac{1}{n^2}\right).$$

As the series

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n^2}$$

converges, and as

$$u_n = O(1), \qquad v_n = O(1),$$

both the series (51) converge uniformly. It remains to be seen whether they represent f and g. Write

$$(53) \qquad \begin{aligned} F(x) &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{+\infty} c_n u_n(x), \\ G(x) &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{+\infty} c_n v_n(x). \end{aligned}$$

From (53),

$$c_n = \int_0^1 [Fu_n + Gv_n]\, dx,$$

while also by (52),

$$c_n = \int_0^1 [fu_n + gv_n]\, dx.$$

Hence, subtracting,

$$\int_0^1 [(F - f)u_n + (G - g)v_n]\, dx = 0,$$

and by Theorem IV,

$$F = f, \qquad G = g.$$

Two details which have been neglected in the above proof require further consideration. In the first place, the use of $\lambda_n + a$, $\lambda_n + b$ in denominators is permissible, since for sufficiently large λ_n, they do not vanish. Secondly, u_n, v_n have been used above with the understanding that the subscript denotes

the serial order of the solution in question, while in the earlier part of the paper, u_n, v_n have indicated the solution corresponding to the root λ_n of $D(\lambda)$ lying in I_n. Since for sufficiently large λ one and only one root of $D(\lambda)$ lies in each I_n, the two interpretations of the subscript differ only by a constant, so that the evaluation $\lambda_n = O(n)$ is still correct. We have thus finally proved

THEOREM V. *If $f(x)$, $g(x)$ are any two functions possessing continuous second derivatives, $0 \leqq x \leqq 1$, and satisfying the boundary conditions (C_0), (C_1), then they may be simultaneously expanded in the uniformly convergent series:*

$$f(x) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{+\infty} c_n u_n(x),$$

$$g(x) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{+\infty} c_n v_n(x),$$

where

$$c_n = \int_0^1 [fu_n + gv_n]\, dx.$$

CORNELL UNIVERSITY,
ITHACA, N. Y.

AUTHOR'S CORRECTION

O. E. Glenn. A memoir upon formal invariancy with regard to binary modular transformations. Invariants of relativity (Transactions, vol. 21, pp. 285–312).

(1) My attention was directed by Dr. W. L. G. Williams to the existence of a certain seminvariant of f_4 modulo 3, of degree four, which is not reducible in terms of the nine seminvariants given on page 295 and stated there, in a theorem, to form a complete system. The seminvariant is of a type for which the starred assumption on page 296 is not valid. The error makes my result for the seminvariants of the quartic modulo 3 much less general than is indicated in the theorem. However, when the system is completed by discovery of the requisite new forms my starred assumption can perhaps be proved for it, and thus my theory would be completed.

(2) The following quadratic covariant was inadvertently omitted from the lists (35), (40), (47):

$$g = sx_1^2 + (s + b_0b_1 + b_0^2)x_1x_2 + b_0(b_0 + b_1 + b_2)x_2^2.$$